

亚历山大(英) 何其莘 顾问

自学导读 First Things First

First Things First 英语初阶



外语教学与研究出版社



LONGMAN朝文



# 《新概念英语》(新版)辅导丛书

主編 何其華 顾问 亚历山大(英)

# 新概念英语自学导读 NCE Study Guide

First Things First

梁燕 编著



990571

7 外语教学与研究出版社



LONGMAN 朗文

HP75/13

# (京)新登字 155 号

京权图字: 01 - 2000 - 1345 图书在版编目(CIP)数据

新概念英语自学导读 1/梁燕编著. - 北京:外语教学与研究出版社, 1999 (新概念英语〈新版〉辅导丛书) [SBN 7 - 5600 - 1799 - 1

Ⅰ.新··· Ⅱ.梁··· Ⅲ.英语 - 自学参考资料 Ⅳ.H31

中国版本图书馆 CIP 数据核字(1999)第 72314 号

## 版权所有 翻印必究

### 新概念英语自学导读 1

编書:梁燕

\* \* \*

出版发行: 外语教学与研究出版社

社 址: 北京市西三环北路 19 号 (100089)

网 址: http://www.fltrp.com.cn

印刷:北京市鑫鑫印刷厂

开 本: 850×1168 1/32

印 张: 10

版 次: 2000 年 7 月第 1 版 2000 年 8 月第 2 次印刷

印 数: 31001-81000 册

书 号: ISBN 7-5600-1799-1/G·751

定 价: 12.90元

\* \* \*

如有印刷、装订质量问题出版社负责调换

#### 外研社 朗文 新概念英语 自学导读 1

### **NEW CONCEPT ENGLISH (New Edition)**

STUDY GUIDE 1: First Things First

English edition of New Concept English © L. G. Alexander 1967
Original English material © Addison Wesley Longman Ltd. 1997
This edition of New Concept English STUDY GUIDE 1
with the addition of Chinese material © Foreign Language Teaching and Research Press and Pearson Education China Ltd., 2000. This edition is published under the Longman imprint, which is an imprint of Pearson Education Group, and by arrangement with Pearson Education China Ltd., Hong Kong.

Licensed for sale in the mainland territory of the People's Republic of China only.

This simplified Chinese characters edition first published in 2000 jointly by Foreign Language Teaching and Research Press and Pearson Education China Ltd.

All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording, or otherwise, without the prior written permission of the Publishers.

合作出版人:李朋义(外研社) 沈维贤(朗文) 主编:何其莘 顾问:亚历山大(英)

责任编辑:任小政 封面设计:诸中英

> 外语教学与研究出版社 联合出版 培生教育中国有限公司

本书任何部分之文字及图片,如未获得本社之书面同意, 不得用任何方式抄袭、节录或翻印。

本简体字版只供在中华人民共和国内地销售。 凡属合法出版之本书,封面均贴有防伪标贴; 凡无防伪标贴者均属未经授权之版本, 本书出版者及原版权持有者将予以追究。

朗文(Longman)为培生教育出版集团(Pearson Education Group)所拥有之商标。

《新概念英语》(新版)是《新概念英语》1967年首次出版以来第一次推出的新版本。现在,由该经典教材的出版者外语教学与研究出版社和培生教育出版中国有限公司独家授权、由原编著者何其莘教授亲自主持编写、亚历山大先生充任顾问的这套《新概念英语》(新版)辅导丛书涵盖自学导读、练习详解、词汇、语法以及录音练习等各方面的内容,是面向中国广大英语爱好者的一套权威的辅导用书,定能满足中国广大读者对《新概念英语》(新版)的全方位的要求,并使英语爱好者在学习过程中最大限度地发挥自己的潜能。

《新概念英语》(新版)辅导丛书包括:

《新概念英语自学导读 1》(NCE Study Guide 1: First Things First)

《新概念英语自学导读 2》(NCE Study Guide 2: Practice and Progress)

《新概念英语自学导读 3》(NCE Study Guide 3: Developing Skills)

《新概念英语自学导读 4》(NCE Study Guide 4:Fluency in English)

《新概念英语练习详解 1》(NCE Exercise Companion 1: First Things First)

《新概念英语练习详解 2》(NCE Exercise Companion 2 : Practice and Progress)

《新概念英语练习详解 3》(NCE Exercise Companion 3: Developing Skills)

《新概念英语练习详解 4》(NCE Exercise Companion 4: Fluency in English)

《新概念英语语法手册》(An NCE Grammar Handbook)

《新概念英语词汇大全》(An NCE Complete Vocabulary List)

《新概念英语词汇自学手册》(An NCE Pocket Dictionary)

《新概念英语录音练习手册》(Recorded Drills for NCE)

### **Preface**

This Study Guide is intended for all students of First Things First, but particularly for those working on their own.

Detailed notes are provided for each of the one hundred and fortyfour texts. These consist of:

- · Further notes on the text
- Grammar in use: further notes on the grammatical points in each text
- · Word study; further notes on the vocabulary
- · Key to written exercises

We believe that these additional notes will help students from all background to henefit from the course and to complete it successfully.

L. G. Am.

Louis George Alexander

### 前 言

该《自学导读》专为所有使用《英语初阶》的学习者而设计,特别适用于自学者。

书中,针对144篇课文中的每一篇均有进一步说明。其中包括:

- 课文详注;
- 语法: 每课语法点详解;
- 词汇学习;
- 练习答案。

我们确信这些补充材料将使各种起点的学习者从中受益,并顺利 学完本课程。

L. G. Armin.

L.G. 亚历山大

# 目 录

Lessons 1~ 2	***************************************	. 1
Lessons 3~ 4		. 4
Lessons 5~ 6		. 8
Lessons 7~ 8	***************************************	13
Lessons $9 \sim 10$		17
Lessons 11 ~ 12		21
Lessons 13~14		25
Lessons 15~16	***************************************	29
Lessons 17~18	***************************************	33
Lessons $19 \sim 20$		37
Lessons 21 ~ 22	***************************************	41
Lessons 23 ~ 24	***************************************	46
Lessons $25 \sim 26$	***************************************	50
Lessons $27 \sim 28$	***************************************	54
Lessons $29 \sim 30$	***************************************	59
Lessons $31 \sim 32$	***************************************	62
Lessons 33~34	***************************************	67
Lessons 35~36	***************************************	72
Lessons 37 ~ 38	***************************************	75
Lessons 39~40	***************************************	79
Lessons 41~42	***************************************	83
Lessons 43 ~44	***************************************	88
Lessons 45 ~ 46	***************************************	92
Lessons 47~48		97

Lessons	49~	50	******	101
Lessons	51~	52		105
Lessons	53~	54	*** ***	110
Lessons	55~	56	*****	114
Lessons	57~	58	******	119
Lessons	59~	60	******	123
Lessons	61~	62		127
Lessons	63~			132
Lessons	65~	66	***************************************	136
Lessons	67∼	68		141
Lessons	69~	70		145
Lessons	71~	72	***************************************	149
Lessons	73~	74	***************************************	153
Lessons	<b>75</b> ~	76		158
Lessons	77 <i>~</i>	78	***************************************	162
Lessons	<b>79</b> ~	80	***************************************	166
Lessons	81~	82	***************************************	170
Lessons	83~	84	***************************************	174
			***************************************	178
			***************************************	181
Lessons			***************************************	186
Lessons				
Lessons	93~	94		194
Lessons			***************************************	
Lessons			***************************************	
			***************************************	
			***************************************	
Lessons	105~	106	***************************************	216

Lessons 107~108	***************************************	220
Lessons 109~110	*** ***	225
Lessons 111 ~ 112		230
Lessons 113~114	***************************************	234
Lessons 115~116		239
Lessons 117~118		244
Lessons 119~120		248
Lessons 121 ~ 122		252
Lessons 123~124		257
Lessons 125~126		261
Lessons 127~128	***************************************	265
Lessons 129~130		270
Lessons 131~132		275
Lessons 133~134		279
Lessons 135~136		284
Lessons 137~138	***************************************	289
Lessons 139~140		294
Lessons 141 ~ 142		299
Lessons 143~144		304

### Lessons $1\sim2$

# **即** 课文详注 Further notes on the text

#### 1. Excuse me! 对不起。

这是常用于表示道歉的客套话,相当于汉语中的"劳驾"、"对不起"。当我们要引起别人的注意、要打搅别人或打断别人的话时,通常都可使用这一表达方式。在课文中,男士为了吸引女士的注意而使用了这句客套话。它也可用在下列场合:向陌生人问路,借用他人的电话,从别人身边挤过,在宴席或会议中途要离开一会儿等等。

#### 2. Yes? 什么事?

课文中的 Yes? 应用升调朗读,意为:"什么事?" Yes? 以升调表示某种不肯定或询问之意,也含有请对方说下去的意思。

#### 3. Pardon?对不起,请再说一遍。

当我们没听清或没理解对方的话并希望对方能重复一遍时,就可以使用这一表达方式。较为正式的说法是:

I beg your pardon.

I beg your pardon?

Pardon me.

它们在汉语中的意思相当于"对不起,请再说一遍"或者"对不起,请再说一遍好吗?"

### 4. Thank you very much. 非常感谢!

这是一句表示感谢的用语,意为"非常感谢(你)"。请看下列类似的表达式,并注意其语气上的差异:

Thank you.

谢谢(你)。

Thanks !

#### 谢谢!

Many thanks.

Thanks a lot.

、〈口〉非常感谢。

Thanks very much . .

### 5. 数字 1~10 的英文写法

1—one 2—two 3—three 4—four 5—five

6—six 7—seven 8—eight 9—nine 10—ten

# ■ 语法 Grammar in use

#### 一般疑问句

一般疑问句根据其结构又分为若干种。通过主谓倒装可将带有 be 的陈述句变为一般疑问句。即将 be 的适当形式移到主语之前,如:

陈述句: This is your watch.

这是你的手表。

This is your watch.

疑问句: Is this your watch?

这是你的手表吗?

(可参见 Lessons  $15 \sim 16$  语法部分有关 be 的一般现在时形式的说明。)

# ☐ 词汇学习 Word study

#### 1. coat n.

上衣,外套:

Is this your coat?

这是你的外套吗?

coat and skirt 〈英〉(上衣、裙子匹配的)西式女套装

### 2. dress n.

(1) 连衣裙;套裙:

Is this your dress? 这是你的连衣裙吗?

(2) 服装;衣服:

casual dress 便服 evening dress 晚礼服

■ りゅうみが無いの かん ましょう

### Lessons 3~4

# ☐ 课文详注 Further notes on the text

1. My coat and my umbrella please. 请把我的大衣和伞拿给我。

这是一个省略形式的祈使句,完整的句子应为:

Give me my coat and my umbrella, please.

口语中,在语境明确的情况下通常可省略动词和间接宾语,如:

(Show me your) Ticket, please.

请出示你的票。

(Show me your) Passport, please.

请出示您的护照。

2. Here's your umbrella and your coat. 这是您的伞和大衣。

Here's 是 Here is 的缩略形式。全句原为: Here is your umbrella and your coat. 缩略形式和非缩略形式在英语的书面用语和口语中均有,但非缩略形式常用于比较正式的场合。

Here's ... 是一种习惯用法,句中采用了倒装句式,即系动词提到了主语之前。又如 Here is my ticket 这句话用正常的语序时为 My ticket is here。

3. Sorry = I'm sorryo

这是口语中的缩略形式,通常在社交场合中用于表示对他人的 歉意或某种程度的遗憾。

Sorry 和 Excuse me 虽在汉语中都可作"对不起"讲,但 sorry 常用于对自己所犯过失表示道歉,而 Excuse me 则多为表示轻微歉意的客套语。

4. Sir, 先生。

这是英语中对不相识的男子、年长者或上级的尊称。例如:在服务行业中,服务员对男顾客的称呼通常为 sir:

What can I do for you, sir?

先生,您要买什么?

Thank you, sir.

谢谢您,先生。

sir 通常用于正式信函开头的称呼中:

Dear sir 亲爱的先生

Dear sirs 亲爱的先生们/诸位先生们

Sir 可用于有爵士称号者的名字或姓名之前(但不用于姓氏之前):

Sir Winston Churchill 温斯顿·丘吉尔爵士 Sir William Brown 威廉·布朗爵士

### 5. 数字 11~15 的英文写法

11—eleven 12—twelve 13—thirteen 14—fourteen 15—fifteen

# ■ 语法 Grammar in use

### 否定句

否定陈述句与肯定陈述句相反,它表示"否定",并且含有一个如 not 之类的否定词。一个内含 be 的否定形式的陈述句,应在其后加 not,以构成否定句:

### 肯定句:

This is my umbrella.

这是我的伞。

### 否定句:

This is not my umbrella.

这不是我的伞。

请再看课文中的这两句话:

{Is this your umbrella? 这是你的伞吗? No, it isn't. 不,它不是。

针对一般疑问句的否定的简略答语是 No, it's not / it isn't。 此处省略和非省略形式的关系为: is not = isn't; it is = it's。 全句应为:

No, it is not my umbrella. 不,它不是我的伞。

# ☐ 词汇学习 Word study

1. suit n.

### (一套)衣服:

Is this your suit? 这是你的衣服吗? a man's suit 一套男装 a woman's suit 一套女装

2. please interjection

(表示有礼貌地请求对方)请;烦劳;

My coat and my umbrella please. 请把我的大衣和伞拿给我。 Please come in. 请进。

# 

#### Lesson 4

В

1 No. It isn't my pen. It's your pen.

6

- 2 No. It isn't my pencil. It's your pencil.
- 3 No. It isn't my book. It's your book.
- 4 No. It isn't my watch. It's your watch.
- 5 No. It isn't my coat. It's your coat.
- 6 No. It isn't my dress. It's your dress.
- 7 No. It isn't my skirt. It's your skirt.
- 8 No. It isn't my shirt. It's your shirt.
- 9 No. It isn't my car. It's your car.
- 10 No. It isn't my house. It's your house.

### Lessons 5~6

# **二** 课文详注 Further notes on the text

1. Good morning. 早上好。

英语中常见的问候用句。对此问候的回应一般也是 Good morning。根据一天中见面时间的不同还可以说 Good afternoon (下午好) 和 Good evening (晚上好)。有时英美人见面时只简单地说一声 Hello。

2. This is Miss Sophie Dupont. 这位是索菲娅·杜邦小姐。

This is + 姓名是将某人介绍给他人时常用的句式。课文中的例子还有:

Sophie, this is Hans.

索菲娅,这位是汉斯。

And this is Naoko.

这位是直子。

3. Mr. Blake / Miss Sophie Dupont, 布莱克先生 / 索菲娅・杜邦 小姐。

英语国家中人的姓名通常由 3 部分组成,即:名 + 中间名 + 姓。在一般情况下,不用中间名。在熟悉的人中间,以名相称,而在正式的场合中常用 Mr. (先生), Mrs. (太太), Miss(小姐)或 Ms. (女士)这些称呼再加上姓。

Mr. 用于男士的姓之前,不能单独使用,如课文中的Mr. Blake; 而 sir 一般单独使用,是对长者、上司或男顾客的尊称,如:

Sorry, sir.

对不起,先生。

Miss 一般用于指未婚女子,不过有时在不知道对方是否已婚时也可使用。

### 4. Nice to meet you. 很高兴见到你。

用于初次与他人见面等非正式场合。对方的回应一般应为 Nice to meet you, too (我也很高兴见到你)。

人们在正式的场合初次见面时常用: How do you do? 相应的回答也是: How do you do? 这是一句问候语,并非问话。

#### 5. 国籍与国家名称有别

请不要将国家名称和与其对应的国籍搞混。课文的 French, German, Japanese, Korean 以及 Chinese 都是表示国籍的词。句中表示中国国籍的词应为 Chinese 而不是 China。

# ■ 语法 Grammar in use

#### 1. 特殊疑问句

以疑问词 who, what, when, which, why, where, whose, how 等引导的问句都叫特殊疑问句,也叫疑问词疑问句,有时还被称为 wh-问句(wh-question)。结构一般为:疑问词+助动词+主语+主动词等。作为疑问词的 what 可以用来询问名字、国籍、工作、颜色、型号等。例如以下几个问句:

What make is this car?
这辆小汽车是什么牌子的?
What nationality are you?
你是哪国人?
What is your job?
你的工作是干什么?
What colour is it?
它是什么颜色的?
What size is this skirt?

这条裙子是多大号的?

#### 2. a 和 an

Sophie is a new student.

索菲娅是一名新学生。

This is an umbrella.

这是一把雨伞。

这两个句子中出现的 a / an 在英语中被称为不定冠词。a 和 an 在意义上没有区别。用 a / an 时,我们必须记住两条基本原则:

- (1) a / an 有不确定的意义(即所说的人、动物或东西对听者或读者来说可能是不知道的)。
- (2) a / an 只能用于单数可数名词之前。

此外还需注意 a 和 an 的发音:a (在平时讲话中发 /ə/音)用于辅音(不是辅音字母)之前;an (/ən/) 用于元音(不仅仅是以元音字母 a, e, i, o, u 开头的词)之前。当我们把 a 或 an 用来说明字母表中的字母时,便会一目了然:

This is a B/C/D/G/J/K/P/Q/R/T/U/V/W/Y/Z. 这是一个B/C/D/G/J/K/P/Q/R/T/U/V/W/Y/Z字母。

This is an A/E/F/H/I/L/M/N/O/S/X. 这是一个 A/E/F/H/I/L/M/N/O/S/X 字母。

# 河 词汇学习 Word study

#### 1. make n.

(产品的)牌子;类型,型号;式样:

What make is your watch? 你的手表是什么牌子的? Her dress is of Italian make. 她的连衣裙是意大利式的。

#### 2. English adi.

英国(人)的;英格兰(人)的;英国化的;

Is it an American car or an English car? 它是美国车还是英国车? John is very English. 约翰生活行事非常英国化。

# 练习答案 Key to written exercises

#### Lesson 6

Α

Alice is a student. She isn't German. She is French. This is her car. It is a French car. Hans is a student. He isn't French. He is German. This is his car. It is a German car.

В

- 1 Is she a German student or a Japanese student? She isn't a German student. She's a Japanese student.
- Is this a German car or a French car? It isn't a German car. It's a French car.
- Is he an Italian student or a German student? He isn't an Italian student. He's a German student.
- Is she an Italian student or a Chinese student? 4 She isn't an Italian student. She is a Chinese student.
- Is this an American car or an English car? It isn't an American car. It's an English car.
- Is he a Japanese student or a Korean student? He isn't a Japanese student. He's a Korean student.

- 7 Is this an English car or an Italian car?
  It isn't an English car. It's an Italian car.
- 8 Is he an English student or a Chinese student?
  He isn't an English student. He's a Chinese student.
- 9 Is this a French car or a German car? It isn't a French car. It's a German car.
- 10 Is this a Chinese car or a Japanese car?
  It isn't a Chinese car. It's a Japanese car.
- 11 Is this an English car or an American car?
  It isn't an English car. It's an American car.
- 12 Is this a Japanese car or a Korean car?
  It isn't a Japanese car. It's a Korean car.

### Lessons 7~8

# 🛄 课文详注 Further notes on the text

1. My name's = My name is  $\circ$ 

这是自我介绍时通常使用的句型: My name is...(后面加上自己的姓名)。有时也可用 I'm...这一句型。

2. Are you French, too? 你也是法国人吗?

在英语中, too 和 either 两个词都表示"也"的意思, 然而 too 仅用于肯定句中, either 则限于用在否定句中。too 和 either 一般都放在句末,且前面通常用逗号隔开。例如:

Is Sophie Italian, too?

索菲娅也是意大利人吗?

Is Robert a keyboard operator, too?

罗伯特也是电脑录入员吗?

3. What nationality are you? 你是哪国人?

此问句用来询问对方的国籍。也可以问 Where are you from? 或 Where do you come from?

4. What's your job? 你是做什么工作的?

What's = What is。询问对方从事何种职业时还可以说: What do you do?

5. I'm an engineer. 我是工程师。

I'm /aim/ = I am。口语中经常使用这种缩略形式。英语不定冠词有两个:a, an。在发音以元音音素开头的词前面用 an, 在发音以辅音音素开头的词前面用 a。engineer /iendʒi'niə/的发音是以元音音素开头的,所以前面要用 an。(可参见 Lessons 5~6 中的有关说明。)

### 6. 数字 16~20 的英文写法

16—sixteen 17—seventeen 18—eighteen

19—nineteen 20—twenty

# ■ 语法 Grammar in use

### 以疑问词 what 所引导的特殊疑问句

(可参见 Lessons 5~6 中的有关说明。)

What ...? 这一问句可以用来询问国籍、工作等等:

What nationality are you?

你是哪国人?

What's your job?

你是干什么的?

对于以上两个问句可如下回答:

I'm Swedish.

我是瑞典人。

I'm an air hostess.

我是一名空中小姐。

现在不妨改用第3人称单数来进行类似的问答:

What nationality is Robert?

罗伯特是哪国人?

He is Italian .

(他是意大利人。

{What's his job?

他是做什么工作的?

He is an engineer.

【他是一名工程师。

# رسركا

# 词汇学习 Word study

### 1. job n.

(1) 职业:

What's your job? 你是做什么工作的?

(2) (一件)工作,活计:

The whole job takes about 40 minutes. 整个工作大约需要四十分钟。

(3) 职责:

It's your job to be on time. 准时是你应该做到的事。

#### 2. nurse

(1) n. 护士; 照料者:

Is she a nurse or a housewife? 她是护士还是家庭主妇?

(2) v. 照料;照看:

All her time goes into nursing her child. 她把全部时间都花于照看自己的孩子上了。

(3) v. 养护;培养;

nurse a young tree 养护树苗 nurse an author of promise 培养有前途的作家

# Ø

# 练习答案 Key to written exercises

#### Lesson 8

Α

- 1 My name is Robert. I am a student. I am Italian.
- 2 Sophie is not Italian. She is French.
- 3 Mr. Blake is my teacher. He is not French.

#### В

- 1 What's his job? Is he a policeman? Yes, he is.
- 2 What's her job? Is she a policewoman? Yes, she is.
- 3 What's his job? Is he a taxi driver? Yes, he is.
- 4 What's her job? Is she an air hostess? Yes, she is.
- 5 What's his job? Is he a postman? Yes, he is.
- 6 What's her job? Is she a nurse? Yes, she is.
- 7 What's his job? Is he a mechanic? Yes, he is.
- 8 What's his job? Is he a hairdresser? Yes, he is.
- 9 What's her job? Is she a housewife? Yes, she is.
- 10 What's his job? Is he a milkman? Yes, he is.

### Lessons 9~10

# □□ 课文详注 Further notes on the text

1. How are you today? 你今天好吗?

这是朋友或相识的人之间见面时问对方身体情况的寒暄话,一般回答语为:

Fine, thank you.

很好,谢谢。

I'm fine, thank you.

很好,谢谢。

I'm very well, thank you.

很好,谢谢。

如问及对方的先生或太太的情况,可以说 How is Tony? 或 How's Emma? 等。

相应的回答可为 He's fine, thanks 或 She's very well, thank you 等。

2. And you? 你好吗?

是 And how are you? 的简略说法。在回答对方问候健康的话 之后反问时用。

3. 数字 21 与 22 的英文写法

21—twenty-one 22—twenty-two

# ■ 语法 Grammar in use

1. How ...? 的一些社交上的用法

how 是一个表示"如何"的疑问词,可以用来引导一些用于社交场合的套话:

(1) 用于询问健康状况或一般生活情况:

How are you? 你好吗? How is Helen today? 海伦今天好吗? How have you been? 你一向可好?

(2) How do you do?(你好吗?)是正式介绍中的一句套话,从不用来询问健康;

(How do you do? |你好! |How do you do? |你好!

(3) how 经常用在询问目前状况的疑问句里,如:

How's life? 生活如何? How are things? 情况怎样? How's work? 工作怎么样?

### 2. 形容词的意义与作用

- (1) 形容词修饰名词所指的人、物等。我们用形容词说明人、物等 是什么样或看上去是什么样的。例如,形容词可以表示质量、 大小、新旧、温度、形状、颜色、产地。
- (2) 许多形容词可用以回答 What ... like? 这样的问题,并可根据 上下文给出笼统的或确切的信息。例如:

What's Tom like?
汤姆看上去是怎样的?
He's very fat.
他看上去很胖。

### (3) 英语中形容词作定语时一般置于名词之前,如:

a young nurse 一位年轻的护士
an old mechanic 一位老机械师
a lazy housewife 一个懒惰的家庭主妇
a thin woman 一个瘦瘦的女人

# ☑ 词汇学习 Word study

- 1. look v.
- (1) 看,瞧,观,望;

Look at that man. Is he thin? 瞧那个男人。他瘦吗? Look carefully before you cross the street. 过马路前要仔细看清来往车辆。

(2) 面向,朝向:

The room looks on the sea.
房间面向大海。
Two windows look to the south.
两扇窗子朝南。

- 2. fine *adj*.
- (1) 健康的;舒适的;

How is Steven today? 史蒂文今天怎么样?

(2) 极好的,优秀的:

a fine view 美好的景色 a fine teacher 一位优秀教师

(3) 优雅的,雅致的:

He is a man with fine manners. 他是一个举止优雅的男人。

# Ø

### 练习答案 Key to written exercises

#### Lesson 10

#### Α

- 1 Mr. Blake isn't a student. He's a teacher.
- 2 This isn't my umbrella. It's your umbrella.
- 3 Sophie isn't a teacher. She's a keyboard operator.
- 4 Steven isn't cold. He's hot.
- 5 Naoko isn't Chinese. She's Japanese.
- 6 This isn't a German car. It's a Swedish car.

#### В

- 1 Look at that man. He's very fat.
- 2 Look at that woman. She's very thin.
- 3 Look at that policeman. He's very tall.
- 4 Look at that policewoman. She's very short.
- 5 Look at that mechanic. He's very dirty.
- 6 Look at that nurse. She's very clean.
- 7 Look at Steven. He's very hot.
- 8 Look at Emma. She's very cold.
- 9 Look at that milkman. He's very old.
- 10 Look at that air hostess. She's very young.
- 11 Look at that hairdresser. He's very busy.
- 12 Look at that housewife. She's very lazy.

### Lessons $11 \sim 12$

# **即** 课文详注 Further notes on the text

- 1. Whose shirt is that? 那是谁的衬衫? 这是特殊疑问句。读时用降调。
- Yes, sir? 什么事,先生?
   请参见 Lessons 1~2 课文详注以及 Lessons 3~4 课文详注。
- 3. Here you are. 给你。

是给对方东西时的习惯用语。递给对方东西或对方在找某物而你指出该物在什么地方时,往往用这种表达方式。也可以说: Here it is(指单数的物)或 Here they are(指复数的物)。句中的 are 和 is 一般应重读。

4. 非省略形式和省略形式之间的关系

it is not = it isn't = it's not.

5. 数字 30 的英文写法

30—thirty

# ■ 语法 Grammar in use

- 1. 以疑问词 whose 引导的特殊疑问句
- (1) 用来询问所有关系。所有者总是一个人而且期望得到的问答 是某人的名字加-'s形式(如 Tim's 蒂姆的),或者是一个所有 格代词(如 mine 我的)。
- (2) 这时 whose 也可在句子中作表语,如:

(Whose is this/that handbay? |这/那个手提包是谁的? | This/That is my mother's. | 这/那是我母亲的。 (3) 当所有关系中指的是某件东西或某种物质时, whose 后面的 名词可以省略:

(Whose (umbrella) is it?

| 这是谁的(附伞)?
| It's his.
| 这是他的、

### 2. 所有格形容词和所有格代词(1)

(1) 所有格形容词与所有格代词都表示所有,即某人或某物属于某一个人,回答以 whose 引导的问句。所有格形容词 my, your 等是限定词,必须始终放在名词之前,只能作定语。它们的形式取决于所有者,而不是被拥有的东西。所有格代词 mine, yours 等不能用在名词前,并且在说话时要加重语气。它们指人或物,单数或复数都一样。请见下表:

所有格形容词	my	your	his	her	its	our	their
所有格代词	mine	yours	his	hers		ours	theirs
中文译法	我的	你(们)的	他的	她的	它的	我们的	他们的

### 如:

This is my car.

这是我的汽车。(定语)

That is her coat.

这是她的上衣。(定语)

Your car is red, mine is blue.

你的车是红色的,我的是蓝色的。(主语)

This book is his, not yours.

这本书是他的,不是你的。(表语)

I have my way, and she has hers.

我有我的处事方式,她有她的。(宾语)

(2) 名词所有格是在词尾加-'s 构成的,不仅可作定语,还可作表语:

Is this Dave's shirt? 这是戴夫的衬衫吗? (作定语) Whose is that shirt? Is it your daughter's? 那条裙子是谁的? 是你女儿的吗? (作表语)

# ☑️ 词汇学习 Word study

1. perhaps adv.

或许,大概,可能:

Perhaps it is, sir.

也许是,先生。

Perhaps it will rain.

也许要下雨了。

Perhaps it's Sophie's handbag.

也许这是索菲娅的手提包。

- 2. catch v.
- (1) 接住,拦住:

Catch!

接着!

(2) 逮住,捕获:

catch a thief 捉住一个贼

(3) 染上(疾病):

catch a cold 伤风

I have caught a bad cold.

我得了重感冒。

# Ø

### 练习答案 Key to written exercises

#### Lesson 12

Λ

- 1 Stella is here. That is her car.
- 2 Excuse me, Steven. Is this your umbrella?
- 3 I am an air hostess. My name is Britt.
- 4 Paul is here, too. That is his coat.

В

- 1 Whose is this handbag? It's Stella's. It's her handbag.
- 2 Whose is this car? It's Paul's. It's his car.
- 3 Whose is this coat? It's Sophie's. It's her coat.
- 4 Whose is this umbrella? It's Steven's. It's his umbrella.
- 5 Whose is this pen? It's my daughter's. It's her pen.
- 6 Whose is this dress? It's my son's. It's his dress.
- 7 Whose is this suit? It's my father's. It's his suit.
- 8 Whose is this skirt? It's my mother's. It's her skirt.
- 9 Whose is this blouse? It's my sister's. It's her blouse.
- 10 Whose is this tie? It's my brother's. It's his tie.
- 11 Whose is this pen? It's Sophie's. It's her pen.
- 12 Whose is this pencil? It's Hans'. It's his pencil.

# Lessons 13~14

# ┴】 课文详注 Further notes on the text

1. It's the same colour. 一样的颜色。

same 通常与定冠词 the 连用,表示"同一的"、"相同的":

two boys of the same age 两个同龄的男孩子

We live in the same city.

我们住在同一个城市里。

2. That is a lovely hat! 真是一顶可爱的帽子!

句末用的是惊叹号,表现出较强的感情色彩。句中的 is 用斜 体,是为了强调,应重读。

3. 数字 40, 50, 60, 70, 80, 90, 100, 101 的英文写法

40—forty

50—fifty

60—sixty

70—seventy 80—eighty

90—ninety

100—a hundred 101—a hundred and one

#### 语法 Grammar in use

1. what colour(s) 引导的特殊疑问句

(可参见 Lessons 5~6 语法中有关特殊疑问句的说明。)

以疑问词 what 引导的 What colour ...? 和 What colours ...? 类型的特殊疑问句式用于询问颜色。又如:

What colour is Anna's hat?

安娜的帽子是什么颜色的?

What colour's Helen's dog?

海伦的狗是什么颜色的?

What colour's your shirt?

你的衬衣是什么颜色的?

What colour is it? 它是什么颜色的?

#### 2. 祈使句

(1) 祈使句的主语通常不直接表示出来,其谓语动词用原型。祈 使句用来表示请求、建议、命令、叮嘱等。如:

Follow me.

跟我来。

Shut the door, please.

请关门。

Look out !

当心!

Keep off the grass!

请勿践踏草地!

Help yourself.

请自己动手。

(2) 某些祈使动词可以后跟 and 和另一个祈使动词,而不是后跟 人们预料的带 to 的动词不定式结构:

Come and see this goldfish.

来看这条金鱼。(不用 Come to see)

Go and buy yourself a new pair of shoes.

去给自己买双新鞋吧。(不用 Go to buy)

Wait and see.

等着瞧吧。(不用 Wait to see)

# プラ 词汇学习 Word study

- 1. nice adj.
- (1) 美好的,好看的:

It's a nice day today, isn't it?

今天天气真好,不是吗? That's a nice dress. 那件连衣裙真好看。

(2) 和蔼的,友好的:

He is very nice to his neighbours. 他对邻居很友善。

(3) 使人高兴的,令人愉快的:

It is so nice to have you here. 你能在这儿真是太好了。 Have a nice time! 祝你玩得痛快点!

- smart adj.
- (1) 漂亮的,时髦的,巧妙的:

Anna's hat is smart.
安娜的帽子漂亮而别致。
You look smart in that new dress.
你穿那件新连衣裙看上去时髦而洒脱。

(2) 聪明的,伶俐的,精明的:

She is a smart student.
她是一名聪颖的学生。
He is a smart businessman.
他是一位精明的商人。

# Ø

## 练习答案 Key to written exercises

#### Lesson 14

Λ

- 1 This is Paul's car.
- This is Sophie's coat.

- 3 This is Helen's dog.
- 4 This is my father's suit.
- 5 This is my daughter's dress.

#### В

- 1 What colour's Steven's car? His car's blue.
- 2 What colour's Tim's shirt? His shirt's white.
- 3 What colour's Sophie's coat? Her coat's grey.
- 4 What colour's Mrs. White's carpet? Her carpet's red.
- 5 What colour's Dave's tie? His tie's orange.
- 6 What colour's Steven's hat? His hat is grey and black.
- 7 What colour's Helen's dog? Her dog's brown and white.
- 8 What colour's Hans' pen? His pen's green.
- 9 What colour's Luming's suit? His suit's grey.
- 10 What colour's Stella's pencil? Her pencil's blue.
- 11 What colour's Xiaohui's handbag? Her handbag's brown.
- 12 What colour's Sophie's skirt? Her skirt's yellow.

## Lessons 15~16

## 🛄 课文详注 Further notes on the text

- 1. Your passports, please. 请出示你们的护照。 请参见 Lessons 3~4 课文详注。
- 2. Here they are. 给您。 本句中的 they 指 passports。请参见 Lessons 11-12 课文详注。
- 3. 名词的复数形式(1)

英语中可数名词有单数和复数两种形式,指一个以上的事物时用复数形式。可数名词的复数形式一般是在单数名词后面加上s,如课文中的 friend—friends /frendz/, tourist—tourists//toarists/, case—cases /ˈkeɪsɪz/。请注意-s 的不同发音。如果名词是以-s 结尾的,变成复数时则要加-es,如 dress—dresses /ˈdresɪz/, blouse—blouses /ˈblaozɪz/。

## ■ 语法 Grammar in use

- 1. 表示复数的-s 或-es 一般遵循的发音规则
- (1) 如果名词词尾的发音是一个清辅音(如 /f/, /k/, /p/, /t/, /θ/; 但/s/, /ʃ/, /tʃ/ 除外),-s 发 /s/的音,如:

books /buks/

suits /suits/

(2) 如果名词词尾的发音是一个浊辅音(如 /b/, /d/, /g/, /1/, /m/, /n/, /ŋ/; 但/z/, /ʒ/, /dʒ/ 除外)或元音,-s 发 /z/ 的音,如:

ties /taiz/

dogs /dnqz/

(3) 如果名词词尾的发音是 /s/, /z/, /ʃ/, /ʒ/, /tʃ/ 或 /dʒ/, -s

### 发 /12/ 的音,如:

dresses /'dresiz/

### 2. be 的一般现在时形式

英语中的动词 be 在使用时有人称的变化。在口语中这些变化常用缩略形式。请看下表。

肯定句	简略式				
l am	I'm ]	I'm not			
You are	You're	You're not = You aren't			
He is	He's	He's not = He isn't			
She is	She's	She's not = She isn't			
lt is	It's	It's not = It isn't $\rightarrow$ old.			
We are	We're	We're not – We aren't			
You are	You're	You're not = You aren't			
They are	They're	They're not = They aren't			

# ② 词汇学习 Word study

## 1. blue adj.

## (1) 蓝色的,蔚蓝的:

The sea is deep blue. 大海呈深蓝色。 He wears a blue tie. 他打一条蓝色的领带。

### (2) 沮丧的,忧郁的:

He looks a bit blue. 他看上去有点儿忧郁。 His mood is blue. 他的情绪低落。

### 2. grey *adj*.

## (1) 灰色的,偏灰的:

His hat is grey. 他的帽子是灰色的。

(2) 头发灰白的:

Her hair is grey. 她的头发灰白。

(3) 面色苍白的:

Tony looks grey and tired. 托尼面色苍白,显得疲惫。

# 练习答案 Key to written exercises

#### Lesson 16

Ā

- 1 It is an English car.
- 2 It is a Japanese car.
- 3 It is an Italian car.
- 4 It is a French car.
- 5 It is an American car.
- 6 Robert is not a teacher.

В

- 1 What colour are your shirts? Our shirts are white.
- 2 What colour are your coats? Our coats are grey.
- 3 What colour are your tickets? Our tickets are yellow.
- 4 What colour are your suits? Our suits are blue.
- 5 What colour are your hats? Our hats are black and grey.

- 6 What colour are your passports? Our passports are green.
- 7 What colour are your umbrellas? Our umbrellas are black.
- 8 What colour are your handbags? Our handbags are white.
- 9 What colour are your ties? Our ties are orange.
- 10 What colour are your dogs? Our dogs are brown and white.
- 11 What colour are your pens? Our pens are blue.
- 12 What colour are your cars? Our cars are red.

## Lessons 17~18

## **即** 课文详注 Further notes on the text

1. How do you do? 您好。

这是用于第一次见面时的较正式用语。一般用同样的话来回答。请参见 Lessons 5~6 课文详注。

- Come and meet our employees...来见见我们的雇员…… 这里的 and 表示目的。请参见 Lessons 13~14 中语法部分的 解释。
- 3. This is Nicola Grey, and this is Claire Taylor. 这位是尼古拉·格雷,这位是克莱尔·泰勒。

这是介绍人们彼此认识时的常用句型。请参见 Lessons 5~6 课文详注。

4. 名词的复数形式(2)

如果名词单数词尾为-f或-fe(读作/f/),则其复数一律变为-ves (读作/vz/),即将-f或-fe 变成·v,再加-es 而成,如 housewife—housewives。

英语中有一些名词的复数形式是不规则的,如 man 与 woman 其复数形式分别为 men 与 women。此外还可用 man, woman 等来区别阳性与阴性:以-man 结尾的一些复合名词指男性,如 milkman—milkmen, policeman—policemen;一些以-woman 结尾的名词指女性,如 postwoman—postwomen, policewoman—policewomen。

5. 数字 200, 1,000, 1,001 的英文写法

200-two hundred

1,000—a (或 one) thousand

1,001—a thousand and one

## 语法 Grammar in use

#### 1. who 引导的特殊疑问句

Who is...?或 Who are...?这类以疑问词 who 引导的疑问句 通常用来询问人的姓名和身份 Who...? 仅指人,可以用来询问男性、女性、单数或复数的人...如:

Who is he? 他是谁? He is Jim. (他是吉姆。

注意这种句型与 What is...? 或 What are...? 这类句型的区别: What...? 句型主要用来询问人的类别或职业,如:

What are their jobs? 他们是干什么的? They are sales reps. 他们是销售代表。

请参见 Lessons 5~6 与 Lessons 7~8 语法部分的解释。

### 2. 所有格形容词与人称代词

(请参见 Lessons 11~12 语法部分。)

所有格形容词 their 意为"他们的",其对应的人称代词是 they。 下面是人称代词及其对应的所有格形容词形式:

人称代词	Ī	you	he_	she	ıt	we	you	they
所有格形容词	mıy	your	his	her	its	our	your	their

(What are their jobs? Are they mechanics or sales reps? 他们是干什么的?是机械师还是销售代表? They aren't mechanics. They're sales reps. 他们不是机械师。他们是销售代表。

## √プ 词汇学习 Word study

#### 1. custom n.

风俗;习惯:

When visiting a foreign country, we might find the country's customs strange to us.

当我们去外国访问时,我们也许会发现该国的某些风俗习惯有些奇怪。

It is his custom to go for a walk in the evenings. 他惯常在晚上出去散步。

# 2. customs, Customs n.

### [复]海关;征收关税的程序;

The spy was stopped at the Customs and questioned.

那个间谍在海关被截住并被加以盘问。

How long will it usually take to pass the Customs? 通过海关检查通常要花费多少时间?

# Ø

## 练习答案 Key to written exercises

#### Lesson 18

A

- 1 That man is tall. He is a policeman.
- 2 Those girls are busy. They are keyboard operators.
- 3 Our names are Britt and Inge. We are Swedish.
- 4 Look at our office assistant. He is very hard-working.
- 5 Look at Nicola. She is very pretty.
- 6 Michael Baker and Jeremy Short are employees. They are sales reps.

- 1 Are they keyboard operators or air hostesses?
  They aren't keyboard operators. They're air hostesses.
- 2 Are they postmen or policemen? They aren't postmen. They're policemen.
- 3 Are they policewomen or nurses?

  They aren't policewomen. They're nurses.
- 4 Are they customs officers or hairdressers?

  They aren't customs officers. They're hairdressers.
- 5 Are they hairdressers or teachers?
  They aren't hairdressers. They're teachers.
- 6 Are they engineers or taxi drivers?
  They aren't engineers. They're taxi drivers.
- 7 Are they policewomen or keyboard operators?
  They aren't policewomen. They're keyboard operators.
- 8 Are they milkmen or engineers?
  They aren't milkmen. They're engineers.
- 9 Are they policemen or milkmen?
  They aren't policemen. They're milkmen.
- 10 Are they nurses or housewives?
  They aren't nurses. They're housewives.

### Lessons $19 \sim 20$

## **二** 课文详注 Further notes on the text

1. What's the matter? 怎么啦?

相当于 What's wrong? 或 Tell me what's wrong。这个句型通常用来询问发生了什么事。假如要特别提及某人,可以在后面加上介词 with,如:

What's the matter with you? 你怎么啦?

What's the matter with Claire? 克莱尔怎么啦?

2. Mum, 儿语中小孩子对母亲的称呼。

与此相似,dad 是对父亲的几语称呼。

3. There's = There is

它表示"有"、"存在",为 there + be 结构的一般现在时缩略形式。

4. Two ice creams please. 请拿两份冰淇淋。

相当于 Give us two ice creams, please。请参见 Lessons 3~4 课文注释。ice cream 是物质名词。物质名词前加不定冠词 a 或基数词表示一种、一份、一客、一类、一阵等。

## ■ 语法 Grammar in use

1. there + be 结构(1)

在说明或询问人、物等的存在时即可使用 there + be 结构。说 There's an ice cream man 比说 An ice cream man is there 更合乎习惯,也更为自然。there + be 结构可将重要的新信息置于句末,以示强调。此结构中的实际主语是 be 后面的名词。因

此,假如该名词是单数就用 is,如是复数则为 are。

#### 2. 人称代词与 be

英文中系动词 be(是)必须根据不同的人称代词作相应的变化。请参见 Lessons 15~16 语法部分中有关 be 的一般现在时形式的内容,包括某些缩略形式,如:they are not = they aren't = they're not, we are not= we aren't=we're not。

## √→ 词汇学习 Word study

- 1. thirsty adj.
- (1) 渴的,口干的;

We're tired and thirsty. 我们又累又渴。

(2)(土地等)干旱的:

a dry and thirsty land 干旱的土地

(3) 渴望的, 渴求的(for, after);

The students there are thirsty for knowledge. 那里的学生有强烈的求知欲。

- 2. matter n.
- (1) 事情,事件:

It's a private matter.

这是件私事。

He's not very interested in financial matters. 他对财政方面的事情并不太感兴趣。

(2) 麻烦事,困难:

What's the matter, Anna?

怎么了,安娜?

What's the matter with Steven?

史蒂文是怎么回事?

# Ø

## 练习答案 Key to written exercises

#### Lesson 20

#### Λ

- 1 Those children are tired.
- 2 Their mother is tired, too.
- 3 That ice cream man is very busy.
- 4 His ice creams are very nice.
- 5 What's the matter, children? We are thirsty.
- 6 What's the matter, Tim? I am tired.

В

- 1 Are the children tired or thirsty? They're not tired. They're thirsty.
- 2 Are the postmen cold or hot? They're not cold. They're hot.
- 3 Are the hairdressers thin or fat? They're not thin. They're fat.
- 4 Are the shoes small or big? They're not small. They're big.
- 5 Are the shops shut or open? They're not shut. They're open.
- 6 Are his cases heavy or light? They're not heavy. They're light.
- 7 Are grandmother and grandfather young or old? They're not young. They're old.
- 8 Are their hats old or new? They're not old. They're new.
- 9 Are the policemen short or tall?

They're not short. They're tall.

10 Are his trousers short or long? They're not short. They're long.

### Lessons $21 \sim 22$

## ☐ 课文详注 Further notes on the text

1. Give me a book please, Jane. 请拿本书给我,简。

这是一个祈使句。祈使句表示请求或命令。(请参见 Lessons 13~14 语法部分的说明。)表示客气的请求时,通常加 please

#### 2. Which book? 哪一本?

是 Which book do you want? 的省略形式。下文中的 This one? 是 Do you want this one? 的省略形式。No, not that one 是 No, I do not want that one 的省略形式。口语中常用这样的省略句。

#### 3. This one? 是这本吗?

相当于: Do you want this one? one 是不定代词,代替 a book,以避免重复。one 的复数形式是 ones。one 和 ones 前面都可用定冠词,也可有自己的定语。如:

{Which one do you want? | 你想要哪一个? | The red one, please. | 请给我那个红色的。 | No, not that blunt one. This sharp one. | (不,不是那把钝的。是这把锋利的。

### 4、数字 1,010, 1,011, 1,016 的英文写法

- 1,010-a thousand and ten
- 1,011-a thousand and eleven
- 1,016—a thousand and sixteen

## ■ 语法 Grammar in use

#### 1. 人称代词

代词,顾名思义,就是用来代替名词或名词短语的词,在已经知道所指的是谁或什么的情况下使用,以免行文重复。人称代词有主格和宾格之分。在陈述句中,主格代词差不多总是位于动词之前。宾格代词可代替处于宾语位置上的名词,它们可以作直接宾语和间接宾语。

#### 人称代词的形式

主格	I	you	he	she	it	one	we	you	they
宾格	me	you	him	her	ít	one	us	you	them

Give me/him/her/us/them a book.

给我/他/她/我们/他(她)们一本书。(宾格代词)

#### 2. which 引导的特殊疑问句

(请参见 Lessons 5~6 中语法部分的说明。)

用 which + 名词可询问物体(单数或复数)或物质。 which 总是说明一种限定的、特指的选择。如:

Which book/books do you prefer?

你喜欢哪本/哪些书?

Which car do you like best?

你最喜欢哪种汽车?

# 🎦 词汇学习 Word study

### 1. large 与 big

(1) large 仅指物理量值的大,是 small 的反义词。

large 主要指体积、面积、形状、数量方面的大,修饰人时指个子大。如:

China is a large country.

中国是一个幅员辽阔的国家。

Look at that large woman in white.

瞧那个身穿白色衣服、个子高大的女人。

(2) big 所表示的大,主要指不仅体积大而且很重。所以 a large box 未必 big。big 在修饰人时,主要指大人物,但个子未必高大。如:

It is a big house.

这是一所大房子。(此句指不仅体积大,而且给人深刻的或结实的印象。)

She's very big in the filmdom.

她在电影界中是个响当当的人物。(此句指不仅成功,且 具有很大的影响力。)

#### 2. small 与 little

(1) small 指物理量值的小或少,是 large 的反义词,不带什么感情 色彩。如:

It is a small factory.

这是一个小工厂。

I want the small one with the yellow handle.

我想要带黄色把手的那个小的。

(2) little 也表示小或少,但有小而可爱的感情色彩,是 big 的反义词。如:

There is a little garden behind our house.

我们的屋后有个小花园。(此句表示花园虽小,但很可爱。)

She has the sweetest little smiles.

她的微笑十分甜蜜可爱。

# B

### 练习答案 Key to written exercises

#### Lesson 22

Α

- 1 Is this Nicola's coat? No, it's not. Her coat is grey.
- 2 Are these your pens? No, they're not. My pens are blue.
- 3 Is this Mr. Jackson's hat? No, it's not. His hat is black.
- 4 Are these the children's books? No, they're not. Their books are red.
- 5 Is this Helen's dog? No. it's not. Her dog is brown and white.
- 6 Is this your father's tie? No, it's not. His tie is orange.

В

Give me a cup please.

Which one? This dirty one?

No, not this dirty one. That clean one.

Here you are.

Thank you.

2 Give me a glass please.

Which one? This empty one?

No, not this empty one. That full one.

Here you are.

Thank you.

3 Give me a bottle please.

Which one? This large one?

No, not this large one. That small one.

Here you are.

Thank you.

4 Give me a box please.

Which one? This big one?

No, not this big one. That little one.

Here you are.

Thank you.

5 Give me a tin please.

Which one? This new one?

No, not this new one. That old one.

Here you are.

Thank you.

6 Give me a knife please.

Which one? This sharp one?

No, not this sharp one. That blunt one.

Here you are.

Thank you.

7 Give me a spoon please.

Which one? This new one?

No, not this new one. That old one.

Here you are.

Thank you.

8 Give me a fork please.

Which one? This large one?

No, not this large one. That small one.

Here you are.

Thank you.

### Lessons 23~24

## 🛄 课文详注 Further notes on the text

#### 1. 动词的双宾语

在 Give me some glasses 中,动词 give 后面有两个宾语,即直接宾语 some glasses 和间接宾语 me。人称代词作宾语时要用人称代词的宾格。请参见 Lessons 21~22 语法部分。

2. The ones on the shelf. 是架子上的那几只。

本句是省略句,句首省略了 I want。句中的 ones 代表 glasses。 on the shelf 是介词短语,作定语,修饰 ones。

3. These? 这几只?

是 Do you want these? 的省略形式。

4. Yes, please. 是的,请拿给我。

当别人问你要不要某物而你同意要时,就可用这句话。又如:

| Will you have some more wine? | 你再来点葡萄酒好吗? | Yes, please. | 好的。

假如你不同意要,则应说:

No, thank you.

不,谢谢。

### 5. 数字 1,117, 1,420, 1,925, 2,000 的英文写法

- 1,117—one thousand one hundred and seventeen
- 1,420—one thousand four hundred and twenty
- 1,925—one thousand nine hundred and twenty-five
- 2,000-two thousand

## ■ 语法 Grammar in use

#### on 引导的介词短语

- (1) 我们经常在名词、名词短语、代词或动名词前面用介词表示人物、事件等与其他人物、事件等之间的各种关系,如空间关系、时间关系、因果关系等。介词始终带有宾语。即使介词与宾语分开时,这种关系仍必定存在。有许多固定的介词短语常可见到。许多介词短语是由介词+名词(+介词)构成的,如:on time(准时), in the middle of(在……中间)。
- (2) 当我们从不同的角度看空间中的位置时,应根据我们想要表达的意思来选择介词。想表示在一个表面(即看来是平面)上面时,就可用介词 on:

the pens on the desk 桌上的钢笔
the boxes on the floor 地板上的盒子
the bottles on the dressing table 梳妆台上的瓶子
the magazines on the bed 床上的杂志

# ☐ 词汇学习 Word study

#### desk 与 table

在汉语中,这两个词都被称为"桌子",而在英语中,它们仍是有 所区别的。

(1) desk 通常指有抽屉的桌子,用于办公、读书、写字等,即"书桌"、"写字台"、"办公桌":

He is working at his desk.

他正在自己的书桌前用功。

I put it on his desk.

我把它放在他的办公桌上了。

(2) table 通常指由若干条腿支撑着的平板,没有抽屉,即"餐桌"、 "会议桌"、"工作台"、"手术台"等: I've booked a table for two at 7.00.

我预订了一张两人桌,是在7点钟。

They sat round the table and made this big decision.

他们围坐在会议桌旁,作出了这个重大的决定。

# Ø

## 练习答案 Key to written exercises

#### Lesson 24

Α

- 1 Give Jane this watch. Give her this one, too.
- 2 Give the children these ice creams. Give them these, too.
- 3 Give Tom this book. Give him this one, too.
- 4 That is my passport. Give me my passport please.
- 5 That is my coat. Give me my coat please.
- 6 Those are our umbrellas. Give us our umbrellas please.

В

1 Give me some pens please.

Which ones? These?

No, not those. The ones on the desk.

2 Give me some ties please.

Which ones? These?

No, not those. The ones on the chair.

3 Give me some spoons please.

Which ones? These?

No, not those. The ones on the table.

4 Give me some plates please.

Which ones? These?

No, not those. The ones on the cupboard.

5 Give me some cigarettes please.

Which ones? These?

No, not those. The ones on the television.

6 Give me some boxes please.

Which ones? These?

No, not those. The ones on the floor.

7 Give me some bottles please.

Which ones? These?

No, not those. The ones on the dressing table.

8 Give me some books please.

Which ones? These?

No, not those. The ones on the shelf.

9 Give me some magazines please.

Which ones? These?

No, not those. The ones on the bed.

10 Give me some newspapers please.

Which ones? These?

No, not those. The ones on the stereo.

## Lessons 25~26

## 课文详注 Further notes on the text

#### 1. 冠词

课文中 refrigerator 一词出现了两次,它前面分别用了两种不同的冠词: a(不定冠词)和 the(定冠词)。第1次提到时用不定冠词 a。(请参见 Lessons 5~6 语法部分。)第2次时就不再是泛指任何一个,而是特指所指的那个了,因此要用定冠词 the。(请参见本课语法部分的说明。)

- 2. 数字 3,000, 5,000, 10,000 的英文写法
  - 3,000—three thousand
  - 5,000—five thousand
  - 10,000—ten thousand

## ■ 语法 Grammar in use

#### 1. 定冠词 the

- (1) 定冠词 the 不论指人还是指物、单数还是复数,其形式都不变。
- (2) the 的发音: the 在辅音前读 /ðɔ/,如: the floor, the table, the bed, the desk; the 在元音(即一般前面用 an 的词的首字母)之前发 /ði:/,如 the engineer, the ice cream, the old man, the open window。当我们想使听话者特别注意 the 后面的名词时, the 就读为 /ði:/,意思是"这一个而且只是这一个"或"主要是这一个"。
- (3) the 的基本用法:
  - A the 通常有明确的所指(即以说话人或听话人已知的人或物为前提);

B the 可与单数可数名词、复数可数名词及不可数名词(总是单数形式)连用。

#### 2. where 引导的特殊疑问句

where 用来询问地点(或是确切的情况,或是一般的情况)。对where 疑问句的回答可以是整句、短语或单个的词。如:

Where is the refrigerator?

冰箱在哪里?

On the right. / It's on the right.

在右边。

Where is the table?

桌子在哪儿?

In the middle of the room . / It's in the middle of the room.

在房子中间。



## 词汇学习 Word study

#### 1. $\sup_{n \in \mathbb{N}} n$ .

(1) 杯子(一般带柄,用于盛热饮料,如茶或咖啡):

I have a beautiful set of tea cups.

我有一套漂亮的茶杯。

I'd like a cup of tea.

我想喝一杯茶。

(2) - 杯饮料; - 杯咖啡:

Would you like another cup?

你要再来一杯吗?

You can get a good cup at Lucy's Café.

你能在露西咖啡馆喝到一杯上好的咖啡。

#### 2. glass n.

#### (1) 玻璃杯或有脚的玻璃杯:

Give me a glass of water, please.

请给我一杯水。

There's a clean wine glass on the table.

桌上有一只干净的酒杯。

#### (2) 杯中物;酒:

He has had a glass too much.

危多喝了一杯(或喝醉了),

I'd like to enjoy a glass now and then.

我喜欢不时喝点酒。

# Ø

## 练习答案 Key to written exercises

#### Lesson 26

Α

- 1 Give me a glass. Which glass? The empty one.
- 2 Give me some cups. Which cups? The cups on the table.
- 3 Is there a book on the table? Yes, there is. Is the book red?
- 4 Is there a knife in that box? Yes, there is. Is the knife sharp?

В

1 There's a cup on the table.

The cup is clean.

2 There's a box on the floor.

The box is large.

3 There's a a glass in the cupboard.

The glass is empty.

52

4 There's a knife on the plate.
The knife is sharp.

5 There's a fork on the tin.
The fork is dirty.

- 6 There's a bottle in the refrigerator.
  The bottle is full.
- 7 There's a pencil on the desk.
  The pencil is blunt.

### Lessons $27 \sim 28$

## 🔲 课文详注 Further notes on the text

1. Where are they? 它们在哪里?

句中 they 指图中的那些东西。(可参见 Lessons 25~26 语法部分。)

2. 数字 9,999 与 10,001 的英文写法

9,999—nine thousand nine hundred and ninety-nine 10,001—ten thousand and one

## 圖 语法 Grammar in use

- 1. there + be 结构(2)
- (1) there be 结构变成疑问句时, 只需将动词 be 和 there 互换位置, 句子其余部分不变。如:

Is there a dirty fork on the plate?

碟子上有一个脏的叉子吗?

Is there a full bottle in the cupboard?

橱柜里有一瓶酒吗?

Are there any ties on the floor?

地上有一些领带吗?

Are there any newspapers on the shelf?

架子上有些报纸吗?

(2) there + be 结构变成否定句时,需在动词 be 后加 not (any)或 no。如:

No, there is not a fork on the plate.

没有,碟子上没有叉子。

No, there isn't one in the cupbourd.

没有,橱柜里一个也没有。

No, there aren't any ties on the floor.

没有, 地板上没有任何领带。

No, there are no newspapers on the shelf.

没有,架子上没有任何报纸。

### 2. some 和 any 的用法

在英语中, some 和 any 是两个最常用的数量词。用 some 和 any 时,一般不必精确地说明数量到底有多么大或多么小。它们的作用常常像是 a/an 的复数。

(1) some(表示确定的数量)表示"某些但不是全部"的意思,通常用于肯定句中。在疑问句中,所希望的回答是 Yes 时也可使用 some。如:

There is some water in the glass.

玻璃杯里有些水。

There are some cigarettes in the box.

盒子里有些雪茄。

Have you got some paper-clips in that box?

你那只盒子里有一些回形针吧?(我知道或我认为你有一些,故希望你会说"有"。)

some 加可数名词或不可数名词时,在流畅的话语中一般不重读,而念为/səm/。

(2) any(表示不确定的数量)通常用在含有 not 或-n't 的否定句中,也用于表示我们不能确定答案是肯定还是否定,或者用于 预料得到的回答是 No 的疑问句中。如:

There are not any spoons in the cupboard.

橱柜中没有任何汤匙。

There aren't any plates on the dressing table.

梳妆台上任何碟子都没有。

{Are there any cigarettes on the floor? 地板上有一些烟吗? No, there aren't. 没有。

### 词汇学习 Word study

near adj.

### (1) 靠近的,接近的:

The television is near the window.

电视机在窗户旁边。

There are some shoes on the floor. They're near the bed. 地板上有些鞋子。它们在床附近。

#### (2) 关系接近的,亲近的:

She is a near friend of mine.

她是我的一位密友。

My uncle is my nearest relative.

我叔叔是我血缘最近的亲戚。

### (3) 近似的;几乎是的:

The picture may not be an exact replica but it's pretty near.

这幅画也许不是一件一模一样的复制品,但它已酷似原作了。

# Ø

### 练习答案 Key to written exercises

#### Lesson 28

A

- 1 There are some pencils on the desk.
- 2 There are some knives near that tin.

- 3 There are some policemen in the kitchen.
- 4 There are some newspapers in the living room.
- 5 There are some keyboard operators in the office.

В

1 Are there any books in the room?

No, there aren't any books in the room.

There are some magazines.

Where are they?

They're on the television.

2 Are there any ties on the floor?

No, there aren't any ties on the floor.

There are some shoes.

Where are they?

They're near the bed.

3 Are there any glasses on the cupboard?

No, there aren't any glasses on the cupboard.

There are some bottles.

Where are they?

They're near those tins.

4 Are there any newspapers on the shelf?

No, there aren't any newspapers on the shelf.

There are some tickets.

Where are they?

They're in that handbag.

5 Are there any forks on the table?

No, there aren't any forks on the table.

There are some knives.

Where are they?

They're in that box.

6 Are there any cups on the stereo?

No, there aren't any cups on the stereo.

There are some glasses.

Where are they?

They're near those bottles.

7 Are there any cups in the kitchen?

No, there aren't any cups in the kitchen.

There are some plates.

Where are they?

They're on the cooker.

8 Are there any glasses in the kitchen?

No, there aren't any glasses in the kitchen.

There are some bottles.

Where are they?

They're in the refrigerator.

9 Are there any books in the room?

No, there aren't any books in the room.

There are some pictures.

Where are they?

They're on the wall.

10 Are there any chairs in the room?

No, there aren't any chairs in the room.

There are some armchairs.

Where are they?

They're near the table.

## Lessons 29~30

# **即** 课文详注 Further notes on the text

1. untidy, 乱,不整齐。

un-是前缀,表示"not"这类否定的意思。

2. air the room, 给房间通通风。

这里的 air 作动词用。名词作动词用是英语构词法的一种。又如; dust $(n_{\cdot})$  灰尘;  $(v_{\cdot})$  掸掉灰尘。

## ■ 语法 Grammar in use

#### must(1)

must 是一个情态助动词,表示"必须"、"应当",与 have to 相似,表示不可逃避的义务。在说话人看来,没有选择余地。但是,must 带有个人色彩,表示说话人的主观意图。表示个人感情时通常用 must。You must ... (你必须……)表示说话人说 / 认为……是必要的。如:

You must sweep the floor. 你必须扫地。(我说这有必要)

## √→ 词汇学习 Word study

#### 1. air

(1) n. 空气,新鲜空气:

Let's go out and breathe some fresh air. 咱们出去呼吸点新鲜空气吧。

(2) n. 空中,空间:

He likes to stay in the open air. 他喜欢在户外呆着。

### (3) v. 晾(衣服、被褥等);使通风;

Open the windows and air the room.

打开窗户使房间通风。

Leave the trousers on the washing-line to air.

把裤子挂到晾衣绳上去晾干。

#### 2. empty

(1) v. 使空;把···倒出(移出);

Empty the bottle of milk.

倒光瓶里的牛奶。

They emptied the house.

他们把房屋搬空了。

(2) v. 流出;走出:

The river emptied itself into the sea.

河水流入大海。

It was raining, and the streets began to empty.

天下起了雨,街上的行人开始稀少了。

(3) adj. 空的:

There are some empty bottles in the refrigerator.

冰箱里有一些空瓶子。

Her purse is empty.

她的钱包是空的。

(4) adj. 空虚的,无意义的:

It's an empty dream.

这是个不现实的梦想。

Officials were flattered by empty complements.

官员们被空洞的恭维话弄得心里美滋滋的。

(5) adj. 呆板的,毫无表情的:

She looked at him with empty eyes.

她木然地看着他。

## He said all this in an empty voice. 他用一种呆板的声调说了这一切。

# ② 练习答案 №

## Key to written exercises

#### Lesson 30

Λ

- 1 Clean it!
- 2 Shut it!
- 3 Open it!

В

- 1 Shut the door!
- 2 Open the window!
- 3 Put on your shirt!
- 4 Take off your shoes!
- 5 Turn on the stereo!
- 6 Turn off the tap!
- 7 Sweep the floor!
- 8 Clean the blackboard!
- 9 Dust the cupboard!
- 10 Empty the cup!
- 11 Read this magazine!
- 12 Sharpen these knives!

## Lessons 31~32

## **即** 课文详注 Further notes on the text

- 1. Where's = Where iso
- 2. She's sitting under the tree. 她正在树阴下坐着。 句中 is sitting 是现在进行时结构,这里是表示现在正在进行的动作。请参见本课语法部分。
- 3. What about the dog? 那么狗呢?

这句话的意思是:What is the dog doing in the garden? 为了避免重复原句中的主语和谓语动词,可以用 What about...? 这个结构,用来询问情况。What about...? (……怎么样?)是英语口语中较常用的一个句式,也可以说 How about...? about一词后面可跟人,也可跟物。通常在对话中,有上下文情况时使用,用于询问情况或征求别人意见。

- 4. run across, 跑着穿过。
- 5、数字 200,000 与 1,000,000 的英文写法

200,000—two hundred thousand

1,000,000—one million

## 圖 语法 Grammar in use

### 现在进行时(1)

(1) 在英文中若想表达此刻正在进行的动作或事件,要用动词的现在进行时形式。现在进行时由 be 的现在时形式(am, is, are) + 现在分词组成。如课文中的 She's sitting under the tree 和 He's climbing the tree 等句子均为现在进行时。对大多数动词来说,在动词后面直接加-ing 即可构成现在分词,如doing, climbing。以-e 结尾的动词,要去掉-e,再加-ing,如

making。如果动词只有一个元音字母而其后跟了一个辅音字母时,则需将与辅音字母双写,再加-ing,如 running,sitting。

(2) 疑问式:将用了现在进行时的句子变成一般疑问句时只需将助动词提前。如:

He's reading a magazine.

他正在看一本杂志。→

Is he reading a magazine?

他正在看一本杂志吗?

(3) 否定式:现在进行时的否定式是将否定词 not 放在助动词之后。如:

The dog is drinking its milk.

狗正在喝它的那份牛奶。⇒

The dog is not drinking its milk.

狗没在喝它的那份牛奶。

# ☑️ 词汇学习 Word study

- 1. climb v.
- (1) 攀登,攀爬:

The children are always climbing trees.

孩子们总是在爬树。

He likes climbing mountains.

他喜欢爬山。

(2) 逐步上升(增长):

The temperature is climbing steadily.

温度正在慢慢地平稳上升。

The price of gold climbed back.

金价逐渐回升了。

(3)(在社会地位等方面)往上爬:

He is trying hard to climb to the top of the social ladder. 他正努力爬到社会的最顶层。

He has climbed to a very high position in his field. 他已在自己的领域中爬到了一个很高的位置。

#### 2. run 🤫 .

### (1) 跑,奔跑:

He is running quickly.

他正飞快地跑着。

He runs a mile every morning to keep fit.

他每天早晨跑一英里步以保持身体健康。

### (2) 流动;流出;

The current is running strong.

水流湍急。

Her eyes ran with tears.

她落泪了。

### (3) 追赶;追逐:

The dog is running after a cat.

那只狗正在追赶一只猫。

Many young men are running after that girl.

许多年轻人在追求那个姑娘。

# **赵** 练

# 练习答案 Key to written exercises

#### Lesson 32

Α

- 1 He is opening the window.
- 2 She is sharpening this pencil.
- 3 She is dusting the cupboard.
- 4 She is emptying the basket.

64

5 He is looking at the picture.

В

- What is Mr. Richards doing?Is he cleaning his teeth?No, he isn't cleaning his teeth.He's opening the window.
- What is my mother doing? Is she shutting the door? No, she isn't shutting the door. She's making the bed.
- 3 What is the dog doing?
  Is it drinking its milk?
  No, it isn't drinking its milk.
  It's eating a bone.
- 4 What is my sister doing?
  Is she reading a magazine?
  No, she isn't reading a magazine.
  She's looking at a picture.
- 5 What is Emma doing?
  Is she dusting the dressing table?
  No, she isn't dusting the dressing table.
  She's cooking a meal.
- 6 What is Amy doing?
  Is she making the bed?
  No, she isn't making the bed.
  She's sweeping the floor.
- 7 What is Tim doing?
  Is he reading a magazine?

No, he isn't reading a magazine. He's sharpening a pencil.

- 8 What is the girl doing?
  Is she turning on the light?
  No, she isn't turning on the light.
  She's turning off the tap.
- 9 What is the boy doing?
  Is he cleaning his teeth?
  No, he isn't cleaning his teeth.
  He's putting on his shirt.
- 10 What is Miss Jones doing?
  Is she putting on her coat?
  No, she isn't putting on her coat.
  She's taking off her coat.

# Lessons 33~34

# 🔲 课文详注 Further notes on the text

1. It is a fine day today. 今天天气好。

句中的 it 是指天气。又如:

{ Is it cold today? 今天冷吗? | No, it isn't. 「不,不冷。

2. some clouds, 几朵云。

some既可修饰可数名词,也可修饰不可数名词。如: some tables -- 些椅子(可数名词), some milk 一些牛奶(不可数名词)。

3. There are some clouds in the sky, but the sun is shining. 天空中飘着几朵云,但阳光灿烂。

这句是并列句,由两个分句构成,连词 but 表明分句之间存在 着对比及转折关系。两分句之间大多要用逗号,有时可不用逗 号。

- 4. Mr. Jones is with his family. 琼斯先生同他的家人在一起。 句中 with 是介词,表示"和……一起"。family 是指"家里的人" 或"家庭成员"。
- 5. They are walking over the bridge. 他们正在过桥。

句中的 over 有"穿过"的意思。又如:

The aeroplane is flying over the river.

飞机正在河上飞过。

The birds are flying over the house.

鸟儿在屋上飞过。

over 还可表示"在……上方"(不接触表面),如:

The sky is over our heads.

天空在我们头顶上。

6. There are some boats on the river. 河上有几艘船。

句中 on 意为"在……上面"(接触表面)。又如:

There is a book on the table.

桌上有一本书。

7. The ship is going under the bridge. 那船正从桥下驶过。

句中 under 意为"在……下面(或下方)"。如:

There is a dog under the tree.

树下有只狗。

ship 一般指海洋中行驶的大船。boat 一词指河中行驶的小船。 另外:aeroplane (英国英语), airplane (美国英语),飞机(正式 用语);plane,飞机(非正式用语)。

# 语法 Grammar in use

### 现在进行时(2)

(请参见 Lessons 31~32 语法部分。)

现在进行时的形式是由 be 的现在时形式 + 现在分词形式构 成。当句中主语名词为复数或者人称代词为第2人称或第3 人称复数时,be 的现在时形式应为 are。

What are the cooks doing? Are they washing dishes?

这些厨师在干什么?在洗盘子吗? No, they aren't washing dishes. They're cooking.

[没有,他们没在洗盘子。他们正在烹饪。

现在进行时的各种形式(包括缩略形式)列表如下:

	Lam )		$-\frac{\Gamma_{\rm m}}{\Gamma_{\rm m}}$		
•	You are  He is Shi is It is We are You are	cooking. eating. washing. drinking milk. opening the window.	You're He's She's It's We're You're	cooking. cating. washing. drinking milk. opening the window.	: : : : :
	They are		They're		

# 词汇学习 Word study

#### 1. jump v.

### (1) 跳跃;跃过;

They are jumping a ditch.

他们正跃过一个深沟。

They jumped off the wall and ran off.

他们从墙上跳下去跑掉了。

### (2) 略去;跳过:

He jumped the first grade in college.

他跳过大学一年级(指跳级直接升入二年级)。

## (3) 突然上升;猛增:

They jumped the registration fees from £20 to £50.

他们把注册费从20英镑涨到50英镑。

His company's profits jumped surprisingly last year.

他所在公司去年的利润令人惊异地飞速增加。

# 2. sleep

### (1) v. 睡觉:

He sleeps for only 4 hours every night.

他每夜只睡 4 个小时。

I was so excited that I could hardly sleep.

我兴奋得无法入睡。

### (2) n、睡眠;睡觉:

He had a good sleep last night. 他昨天夜里睡得很酣畅。

# 练习答案 Key to written exercises

#### Lesson 34

A

- 1 She is typing a letter.
- 2 She is making the bed.
- 3 He is coming.
- 4 The sun is shining.
- 5 He is giving me some magazines.

В

- 1 What are the men doing? They're cooking a meal.
- What are they doing? They're sleeping.
- 3 What are the men doing? They're shaving.
- 4 What are the children doing? They're crying.
- 5 What are the dogs doing? They're eating bones.
- 6 What are the women doing?
  They're typing letters.
- 7 What are the children doing?
  They're doing their home-work.

- 8 What are the women doing? They're washing dishes.
- 9 What are the birds doing? They're flying over the river.
- 10 What are they doing? They're walking over the bridge.
- What are the man and the woman doing? They're waiting for a bus.
- 12 What are the children doing? They're jumping off the wall.

# Lessons 35~36

# 🛄 课文详注 Further notes on the text

This is a photograph of our village. 这是我们村庄的一张照片。
 句中 of 是介词,表示"……的"。又如:

the windows of a room 房间的窗户

2. It is between two hills. 我们的村庄坐落在一个山谷之中。 句中 It 指 village。between 是介词,表示"在……(两者)之间"。 又如:

The man is standing between two policemen.这个男人正站在两名警察之间。

- 3. along the banks of the river, 沿着河岸。 along 为介词,表示"沿着"。
- 4. He is swimming across the river. 他正横渡小河。 across 为介词,表示"通过"某个平面。
- 5. beside a park, 位于公园旁边。 beside 为介词,表示"在……旁边"。

# 画 语法 Grammar in use

### 短语动词

短语动词通常是指后面常跟一个介词或副词短语的动词,即动词+介词或副词小品词。英语(特别是在非正式的、惯用的英语)中存在着一种用动词短语代替与其同义的单个动词的强烈趋势。如听到敲门声,我们会说 Come in 而不会用 Enter 来表达。最常见的短语动词是由英语中最短小和最简单的动词构成的,这些动词常与表示位置或方向的词组合,如 along,down, in, off, on, out, over, under 等。例如:

The cats are running along the wall.

猫正沿着墙跑。

The children are jumping off the branch.

孩子们正从树枝上跳下来。

不仅一个单个动词可以同大量的介词或副词小品词一起构成 短语动词,而且一个短语动词本身也可能有儿种不同的意义。

# 🎦 词汇学习 Word study

#### 1. go into

(1) 走进;进入:

He is going into a shop. 他正走进一家商店。

(2) 进入;介入:

They're going into the business world. 他们正步入商界。

#### 2. sit on

(1) 坐在……上;

The children are sitting on the grass. 孩子们正坐在草地上。

(2) 〈口〉拖延;压下:

They are trying to sit on the bad news as long as possible. 他们正试图尽可能拖延时间不把这个坏消息讲出去。

### 3. run along

(1) 沿着……跑:

The dogs are running along the river banks. 狗正沿着河岸奔跑。

(2) 离开;走开:

It's getting dark, we must run along.

### 天黑了,我们得走了。



# 练习答案 Key to written exercises

#### Lesson 36

Λ

- 1 He is swimming across the river.
- 2 She is sitting on the grass.
- 3 The cat is running along the wall.

В

- I Where is the man going? He's going into the shop.
- 2 Where is the woman going? She's going out of the shop.
- 3 Where is he sitting? He's sitting beside his mother.
- 4 Where are they walking? They're walking across the street.
- 5 Where are the cats running? They're running along the wall.
- 6 Where are the children jumping? They're jumping off the branch.
- 7 Where is the man standing? He's standing between two policemen.
- 8 Where is she sitting? She's sitting near the tree.
- 9 Where is it flying? It's flying under the bridge.
- 10 Where is the aeroplane flying? It's flying over the bridge.
- 11 Where are they sitting? They're sitting on the grass.
- Where are the man and the woman reading? They're reading in the living room.

# Lessons 37~38

# ☐ 课文详注 Further notes on the text

What are you going to do now, George? 你现在准备干什么,乔治?

be going to,是打算、准备、按计划在最近做某事,表示将来。请参见本课语法部分。

- 2.  $Pink's = Pink is_0$
- 3. It's for my daughter, Susan. 是为我的女儿苏珊做的。
  Susan 作 my daughter 的同位语。

# ■ 语法 Grammar in use

### 将来时 be going to

- (1) 将来时 be going to 的形式由 am/is/are going to + 动词原形构成。
- (2) 将来时 be going to 的用法
  - A 表示"打算"、"准备"在最近做某事。(在非正式语体中,一般多用 be going to,而不用 will。)

I am going to put it on the floor.

我打算把它放在地板上。

He is going to paint the bookcase tomorrow.

他准备明天给书架刷漆。

B 表示按计划、安排要发生的事:

The meeting is going to begin at nine.

会议将在9点开始。

Where are you going to build the road?

你们将在什么地方筑路?

### C 表示预言一件事即将发生:

The meeting is going to begin at nine.

会议将在9点开始。

It's going to rain!

天要下雨了!

She's going to faint!

她要晕倒了!

### (3) be going to 的疑问式与否定式

将助动词 be 提至句首可将陈述句变为一般疑问句。如:

George is going to paint it pink.

乔治打算把它刷成粉红色。⇒

Is George going to paint it pink?

乔治打算把它刷成粉红色吗?

在助动词后面加上 not 可以得到否定句。如上句可变为:

George is not going to paint it pink.

乔治不打算把它刷成粉红色。

# √ 词汇学习 Word study

### 1. paint

(1) v. 上漆,涂:

What colour is George going to paint it?

乔治准备把它漆成什么颜色的?

(2) v. (用颜料)画:

Who painted this picture?

这幅画是谁画的?

(3) v. 描写;描绘:

His novel paints a peaceful picture of the country life in Europe.

他的小说描绘了有关欧洲乡村生活的宁静画面。

(4) n. 油漆;涂料;颜料:

Wet Paint!

油漆未干!

I bought a box of paints.

我买了一盒颜料。

#### 2. work

(1) v. 工作;劳动:

He works 45 hours per week. 他每周工作 45 个小时。

(2) v. 从事职业:

He works as a bank clerk! "out guide not out of 他是一名银行职员。 - rud s rol gui

(3) v. 学习;做作业;

If you work hard, you'll pass your exams. 如果你用功的话,你就会考试通过。

(4) n. 工作;劳动;作业;职业;

He wants to have a good sleep after a day's work.

在一天的工作之后,他想好好睡上一觉。

The students finished all their work in class.

学生们当堂把全部作业都完成了。

He is without work.

他失业了。



# 练习答案 Key to written exercises

#### Lesson 38

A

1 What are you doing? We are reading.

- 2 What are they doing? They are doing their homework.
- 3 What is he doing? He is working hard.
- 4 What are you doing? I am washing the dishes.

В

- 1 What are you going to do?I'm going to shave.What are you doing now?I'm shaving.
- What are you going to do? I'm going to wait for a bus. What are you doing now? I'm waiting for a bus.
- 3 What are you going to do?
  I'm going to do my homework.
  What are you doing now?
  I'm doing my homework.
- 4 What are you going to do?
  I'm going to listen to the stereo.
  What are you doing now?
  I'm listening to the stereo.
- 5 What are you going to do?
  I'm going to wash the dishes.
  What are you doing now?
  I'm washing the dishes.

# Lessons 39~40

### 课文详注 Further notes on the text

1. Don't do that. 不要放在那儿。

在英文中需用祈使语气来表示直接的命令、建议等多种意图,而祈使句的否定式则由 Don't(或 Do not)+动词原形构成,又如课文中的 Don't drop it!(别摔了!)等句子。(请参见本课语法部分。)

2. Give it to me. 把它给我。

在第 21 课有 give me a book 这样的句型,在本课中又出现了 give it to me 的句型。

在动词 give 后面可以有两个宾语:即直接宾语(指物,如 a book, it)和间接宾语(指人,如 me)。如果直接宾语置于动词 give 之后,间接宾语之前则带 to。再比较一下下列句式:

Show her the magazine.

给她那本杂志。

Show it to her.

把它给她。

Give me that knife.

给我那把小刀。

Give it to me.

(把它给我。

Send him the letter.

送给他这封信。

Send it to him.

把它送给他。

Give me the newspapers. 给我报纸。 Give them to me.

<sup>し</sup>把它们给我。

3. in front of, 在……前面。

有别于 in the front of,在……的前部。

4. There we are! 就放在那里!

在这里表示说话人的满意心情,可理解为"好了"、"行了"等。

# ■ 语法 Grammar in use

### 祈使句的否定缩略式

形式为 Don't(或 Do not) + 动词原形,如:

Don't wait!

别等了!

Don't speak to me like that !

别那样跟我讲话!

使用祈使句时,重音、语调、手势和面部表情,尤其是情境和上下文,都说明这种形式用于表示是否友好、不客气、愤怒、不耐烦、有说服性等。一般而言,祈使句的否定式通常用 Don't 来表示,完整形式 Do not 主要用于正式文告中。

# 🎦 词汇学习 Word study

- 1. drop v.
- (1) (失手)落下;掉下;放下:

Be careful! Don't drop it.

小心!别摔了。

She dropped her knife and fork and hurried to answer the phone.

她放下刀叉赶紧去接电话。

### (2)(使)滴下;滴水:

Tears dropped from her face.

泪珠从她的脸上滑落。

### (3)(使)下降;降低:

He dropped his voice.

他把声音放低了些。

Yesterday the temperature dropped to 8°C below zero.

昨天气温下降到了摄氏零下8度。

#### 2. send v.

### (1) 送给;寄:

She is going to send a letter to her sister.

她准备给她的姐姐寄封信。

I'll send him a present.

我将给他送去一件礼物。

### (2) 差遺;命(或请)……去:

He sent his secretary for a doctor.

他派他的秘书去请医生了。

Her mother often sends her to the store for some groceries.

她母亲经常差遣她去商店买些杂货。

# Ø

# 练习答案 Key to written exercises

#### Lesson 40

Α

- 1 Send that letter to George.
- 2 Take those flowers to her.
- 3 Show that picture to me.
- 4 Give these books to Mrs. Jones.

5 Give these ice creams to the children.

В

- 1 I'm going to put it on.
- 2 1'm going to take them off.
- 3 I'm going to turn them on.
- 4 I'm going to turn it off.
- 5 I'm going to put it on.
- 6 I'm going to take it off.
- 7 I'm going to turn them on.
- 8 I'm going to turn it off.
- 9 I'm going to turn them off.
- 10 I'm going to turn it on.

# Lessons 41~42

# 🛄 课文详注 Further notes on the text

1. Not very. 不太重。

是 It is not very heavy 的省略形式。口语中回答问题时,常把主语、动词和宾语都省略,只剩一个副词、一个副词词组或一个动词不定式短语等。又如:

{Is that tin of tobacco for me? 那听烟草是为我准备的吗? No, certainly not. 不,当然不是。

2. Put it on this chair. 把它放在这把椅子上。

it 指 bag。在没有扶手的椅子上用 on,在有扶手的椅子上用 in。如:

sit on a chair 坐在椅子上 sit in an armchair 坐在扶手椅里

cheese, bread, soap, chocolate, milk, sugar, coffee, tea, tobacco

这些词都是不可数名词。不可数名词前面不能加 a 或 an,也没有复数形式。如果想表示"一些"之意,可用 some, any 等词。some 用于肯定句, any 用于否定句和疑问句。(可参见 Lessons 27~28 语法部分。)如:

[Is there any milk here?] 这儿有牛奶吗?

Yes, there is. There's some on the table.

有 真子上有一此

Is there any bread on the table? 桌子上有面包吗? There isn't any bread. There's some milk. 没有面包,有些牛奶。

如果要表示"一块"、"一张"、"一条"等,需加如 a piece of 这类表示数量的短语。本课表示数量的短语还有:

- a loaf of 一个
- a bar of 一条
- a bottle of 一瓶
- a pound of 一磅

half a pound of 半磅

- a quarter of 四分之一
- a tin of 一听
- 4. a loaf of bread, 一个面包。

指西餐中切成片吃的整个面包。

5. a bar of chocolate, 一块巧克力。

指一长条巧克力糖。这种形状的巧克力有时也可称为一块巧克力。

# 画 语法 Grammar in use

### there + be 结构(3)

当 there + be 后跟单数名词或不可数名词时,动词 be 的一般现在时形式为 is;当后面跟复数名词时,动词用 are。如果后跟几个并列名词,而第一个名词是单数,动词仍用 is。there + be 后面的名词是句子的主语。如:

There is a hammer on the bookcase.

书箱上有个御头。(单数名词)

There is some tea in the cup.

杯子里有些茶水。(不可数名词)

There are three bottles of milk on the table.

桌子上有3瓶牛奶。(不可数名词,用复数量词修饰)

There is a pen, two books and a knife on the desk.

课桌上有一枝钢笔、两本书和一把小刀。(第一个并列名词是单数)

也请参见 Lessons 19~20 以及 Lessons 27~28 语法部分。

# ☐ 词汇学习 Word study

- 1. bar n.
- (1) 条;块:

He has just had a chocolate bar.

他刚刚吃了一块巧克力。

(2)(门、窗的)闩;杆:

He is now behind bars.

他现在被关在监狱里。(bar 指窗上装有铁栅栏,behind bars 是一种非正式固定用语,意为 in prison,关在监狱. 里。)

(3) 酒吧(间):

The bar is very crowded.

酒吧里人很拥挤。

- 2. pound n.
- (1) 磅;常衡磅(分成 16 盎司,等于 0.4536 千克,略作 1b.);金衡磅(分成 12 盎司,等于 0.3732 千克,略作 1b.t.);

It weighs 15 pounds.

它的重量为15磅。

Give me a pound of sugar, please.

请给我1磅糖。

# (2) 英镑(英国货币单位,简写为工,全称为 pound sterling):

The shirt costs me £20.

买这件衬衣花了我 20 镑。

Half a pound of coffee costs one pound.

半磅咖啡的价格是一英镑。

# Ø

# 练习答案 Key to written exercises

#### Lesson 42

Α

- 1 Is there any bread in the kitchen?
- 2 There's a loaf on the table.
- 3 There's some coffee on the table, too.
- 4 There isn't any chocolate on the table.
- 5 There's a spoon on that dish.
- 6 Is there any soap on the dressing table?

В

1 Is there a spoon here?
Yes, there is. There's one on the plate.

2 Is there a tie here?
Yes, there is. There's one on the chair.

3 Is there any milk here?
Yes, there is. There's some on the table.

4 Is there a hammer here?Yes, there is. There's one on the bookcase.

5 Is there any tea here?
Yes, there is. There's some on the table.

6 Is there a vase here?

86

Yes, there is. There's one on the radio.

- 7 Is there a suit here?Yes, there is. There's one in the wardrobe.
- 8 Is there any tobacco here? Yes, there is. There's some in the tin.
- 9 Is there any chocolate here?
  Yes, there is. There's some on the desk.
- 10 Is there any cheese here?
  Yes, there is. There's some on the plate.

# Lessons 43~44

# **二** 课文详注 Further notes on the text

- 1. Can you make the tea, Sam? 你会沏茶吗,萨姆?
  make the tea, 沏茶。句中 can 是英语中最常见的几个情态助动词之一,请参见本课语法部分。
- 2. behind, 在……的后面。 与 in front of (在……前面)互为反义词。
- 3. The kettle's boiling! 水开了! 这里的 kettle= water in the kettle。用容器来指代容器内的东西是一种修辞格,叫借代(metonymy/mi'tonimi/)。

# 🗐 语法 Grammar in use

### can(1)

can 是英语中最常用的几个情态助动词之一,它本身不表示动作,只表示体力或脑力方面的能力或客观可能等。它必须与其他动词连用,本身没有性和数的变化。如:

I can see some coffee on the table.

我能看到桌子上的一些咖啡。

Can Sam read this book?

萨姆看得懂这本书吗?

can 的否定形式为 can not, cannot 或 can't(省略式):

I can't see any coffee.

我看不见什么咖啡。

He can't find the cups.

他找不到杯子。

# 🎦 词汇学习 Word study

#### 1. find v.

### (1) 找到; 寻得;

It is most important to find a suitable person for the job. 找到一位适合做这项工作的人是至关重要的。

Where are the cups? I can't find them.

杯子放在哪儿啦?我找不到它们。

### (2) 找出;查明:

Shall we ever find an answer to the tough problem? 我们能找出解决这一难题的办法吗?

It is found that 70% of college students have part-time jobs.

已查明,有70%的大学生做兼职工作。

#### 2. boil v.

### (1) 开,滚;沸腾;

When water boils it changes into steam. 水沸腾时会变成蒸气。

### (2)(海等)翻腾;汹涌:

The stormy sea is boiling.

暴风雨中的大海汹涌起伏。

### (3)(人、感情等)激动;发怒;

Seeing the national flag made me boil. 看着国旗,我心潮澎湃。



# 练习答案 Key to written exercises

#### Lesson 44

Α

- 1 I can see some spoons, but I can't see any knives.
- 2 I can see some hammers, but I can't see any boxes.
- 3 I can see some coffee, but I can't see any loaves of bread.
- 4 I can see some cupboards, but I can't see any shelves.
- 5 I can see Mr. Jones and Mr. Brown, but I can't see their wives.
- 6 I can see some cups, but I can't see any dishes.
- 7 I can see some cars, but I can't see any buses.

В

- 1 Is there any milk here?Yes, there is. There's some in front of the door.
- 2 Is there any soap here?
  Yes, there is. There's some on the cupboard.
- 3 Are there any newspapers here?
  Yes, there are. There are some behind that vase.
- 4 Is there any water here?Yes, there is. There's some in those glasses.
- 5 Is there any tea here?
  Yes, there is. There's some in those cups.
- 6 Are there any cups here?Yes, there are. There are some in front of that kettle.
- 7 Is there any chocolate here?
  Yes, there is. There's some behind that book.
- 8 Are there any teapots here?

Yes, there are. There are some in that cupboard.

9 Are there any cars here?
Yes, there are. There are some in front of that building.

10 Is there any coffee here?Yes, there is. There's some on the table.

# Lessons 45~46

# 🛄 课文详注 Further notes on the text

1. Can you come here a minute please, Bob? 请你来一下好吗,鲍勃?

句中的 a minute 是时间状语,表示"一会儿"、"片刻"。又如: Wait a minute, please. 请稍等一会儿。

2. She's next door. 她在隔壁。 这里 next door 起副词作用,作表语。

# 画 语法 Grammar in use

#### can(2)

can 是情态助动词,表示"能力"。情态助动词的否定式由情态助动词加 not 构成;疑问句中将情态助动词置于句首,后接句子的主语和主要谓语动词。又如:

Can Penny and Jane wash the dishes? 彭妮和简会洗盘子吗?
Yes, they can.
是的,她们会。
Can George take these flowers to her?
乔治会把这些花带给她吗?
No, he can't.

can 本身没有人称或数方面的变化。它还可以与疑问词一起用在特殊疑问句中。如:

Who can go into the boss's office? 谁能到老板的办公室里去? Bob can.

鲍勃能。

What can Penny and Jane do? 彭妮和简会干什么? They can wash the dishes. 她们会洗盘子。

What can the cat do? 猫会干什么? It can drink its milk. 它会喝它的那份牛奶。

| What can't she do? | 她不会干什么? | She can't put her coat on. | 她不会穿上衣。

# 间汇学习 Word study

- 1. lift v.
- (1) 提;抬;举:

Can you lift this heavy suitcuse?
你能提起这个沉重的衣箱吗?
The elderly lady lifted her eyes from the book.
那位年长的女士从书本上抬起眼睛。

(2) 提高; 搞高……地位:

This polity lifted Chinese exports of silk. 这项政策提高了中国丝绸的出口量。

#### 2. make v.

# (1) 制作;创造:

She is going to make a very big birthday cake.

她准备做一个非常大的生日蛋糕。

Hollywood can make the most famous film stars in the world.

好莱坞可以造就世界上最著名的影星。

### (2) 产生,引起,导致:

You have made a serious mistake.

你犯了一个严重的错误。

Don't make so much noise, please!

请别这么大肆喧闹!

### (3) 整理;料理;准备:

She is now making the bed for a guest.

她现在正为客人铺床。

The coffee is made.

咖啡煮好了。

### 3. terrible adj.

## (1) 可怕的;骇人的;

This is a picture of terrible new weapons.

这是一张可怕的新式武器的图片。

### (2) 困难的;费劲的:

Who can accomplish this terrible task? 谁能完成这项艰难的任务?

### (3) 极度的;非常严重的;

I' ve got a terrible headache.

我头疼得厉害。

### (4) 〈口〉糟透的;很蹩脚的:

She is terrible at maths.

### 她的数学很蹩脚。



# 练习答案 Key to written exercises

#### Lesson 46

#### A

- 1 They can type these letters.
- 2 She can make the bed.
- 3 You can swim across the river.
- 4 We can come now.
- 5 We can run across the park.
- 6 He can sit on the grass.
- 7 I can give him some chocolate.

#### В

1 Can you type this letter?

Yes, I can.

What can you do?

I can type this letter.

2 Can Penny wait for the bus?

Yes, she can.

What can she do?

She can wait for the bus.

3 Can Penny and Jane wash the dishes?

Yes, they can.

What can they do?

They can wash the dishes.

4 Can George take these flowers to her?

Yes, he can.

What can he do?

He can take these flowers to her.

5 Can the cat drink its milk?

Yes, it can.

What can it do?

It can drink its milk.

6 Can you and Tom paint this bookcase?

Yes, we can.

What can you and Tom do?

We can paint this bookcase.

7 Can you see that aeroplane?

Yes, I can.

What can you do?

I can see that aeroplane.

8 Can Jane read this book?

Yes, she can.

What can she do?

She can read this book.

# Lessons 47~48

# 🛄 课文详注 Further notes on the text

1. Yes, I do. 是的,我喜欢。

是一句肯定的简略回答。如果是否定的回答,则应为 No, I don't。I like...和 I don't like...这两个句型是分别表示"我喜欢/想要……"和"我不喜欢/想要……"的惯常用法。

2. black coffee, 不加牛奶或咖啡伴侣的清咖啡。

加牛奶的咖啡叫 white coffee。black 在有些搭配中不译为黑色的,如:

black tea 红茶

#### 3. 序数词 1st~12th

1st—first 2nd—second 3rd—third
4th—fourth 5th—fifth 6th—sixth
7th—seventh 8th—eighth 9th—ninth
10th—tenth 11th—eleventh 12th—twelfth

英语中序数词必须与定冠词(the)连用。虽然有时不在形式上表现出来,在朗读的时候也必须加上 the。如: the 1st month (第1个月), the twelfth century (12世纪)。

# 圖 语法 Grammar in use

### 一般现在时(1)

一般现在时可用以陈述现在时段内发生或存在的事件、动作或行为。这些事件、动作或情景说不定会无限地延续下去。但实际上,我们的意思则是在说"这是现在存在着的状况"。一般现在时还可以表示普遍真理以及习惯性的动作。如:

I like black coffee.

我喜欢喝清咖啡。

I don't want any milk in my tea.

我想给我的茶中加什么牛奶。

My father works in a bank.

我父亲在一家银行工作。

I get up at 7.

我7点钟起床。

The earth goes round the sun.

地球围着太阳转。

一般现在时的疑问句和否定句中使用 do/does。用 he, she, it 作主语时,应使用动词第3人称单数形式,在动词原形后加-s; 在疑问句中,则用 does 来表示这层意思。如:

Do you like oranges?

你喜欢橙子吗? Yes, I do. I like oranges, but I don't want one.

是的,我喜欢。我喜欢橙子,但是我现在不想吃。

[Does Ann want any milk in her coffee?

安想给她的咖啡中加一些牛奶吗? No, she doesn't. She likes black coffee. 不,她不想。她喜欢清咖啡。

# 词汇学习 Word study

1. like v.

### (1) 喜欢:

I like that sweet girl.

我喜欢那个可爱的姑娘。

John likes Chinese food.

约翰喜欢吃中国菜。

### (2) 想要;希望有:

Would you like some coffee? 你要不要来点咖啡? How does Ann like her coffee? 安想喝什么样的咖啡?

### 2. want v.

### (1) 想要;希望;

I want some sugar. 我想要些糖。 I want you to try. 我希望你试试。

### (2) 需要:

Those drooping flowers want water.
那些正在枯萎的花朵需要水分。
My leather shoes want cleaning.
我的皮鞋需要擦擦了。

# 练习答案 Key to written exercises

### Lesson 48

Α

- 1 The aeroplane is flying over the village.
- 2 The ship is going under the bridge.
- 3 The children are swimming across the river.
- 4 Two cats are running along the wall.
- 5 The boy is jumping off the branch.
- 6 The girl is sitting between her mother and her father.
- 7 The teacher is standing in front of the blackboard.
- 8 The blackboard is behind the teacher.

1 Yes, I do.
I like honey, but I don't want any.

2 Yes, I do. I like bananas, but I don't want one.

3 Yes, I do.
I like jam, but I don't want any.

4 Yes, I do.
I like oranges, but I don't want one.

5 Yes, I do.
I like ice cream, but I don't want any.

6 Yes, 1 do.1 like whisky, but I don't want any.

7 Yes, I do.1 like apples, but I don't want one.

8 Yes, I do.
I like wine, but I don't want any.

9 Yes, I do.I like biscuits, but I don't want one.

10 Yes, I do.
I like beer, but I don't want any.

## Lessons $49 \sim 50$

# 🔲 课文详注 Further notes on the text

### 1. What about some steak? 来点牛排吗?

句中 What 可以换成 How,用来征求对方看法或意见。请参看 Lessons 31~32 课文详注。

### 2. to tell (you) the truth, 老实说,说实话。

它常用于句首,作句子的附加成分,表示说话人对所说话语的态度:

To tell you the truth, I don't like his new car at all. 给你讲实话,我一点儿也不喜欢他的那辆新车。

### 3. 序数词 13th~24th

13th—thirteenth14th—fourteenth15th—fifteenth16th—sixteenth17th—seventeenth18th—eighteenth19th—nineteenth20th—twentieth21st—twenty-first

22nd—twenty-second23rd—twenty-third 24th—twenty-fourth

## ■ 语法 Grammar in use

### 1. 选择疑问句

含有 or 的问句称为选择疑问句。or 之前的部分读升调,之后的部分读降调。这种疑问句不能简单地用 Yes 或 No 来回答。选择疑问句把选择的余地缩小在数目有限的事物、行动等上面,可以有无限性的选择、3 项选择以及两项选择。选择疑问句通常可以采用缩略形式,如:

Beef or lamb?

牛肉还是羔羊肉?

选择疑问句的例句如:

What would you like to drink?
你喜欢喝什么?(无限性选择)
Which/What would you prefer, tea or coffee?
茶和咖啡,你喜欢哪一种?(两项选择)
Would you like tea, coffee, or milk?
你喜欢茶、咖啡、还是牛奶?(3 项选择)
How shall we go, by bus or by train?
我们怎么走?乘公共汽车还是坐火车?
Did you go there, or didn't you?
你去了那儿还是没有去?
Did you or didn't you go there?
你是去了还是没有去那儿?

### 2. 一般现在时的单数第3人称形式

(可参见 Lessons 47~48 语法部分。)

在肯定句、否定句以及疑问句中的表现方式如下所示:

Who likes lamb? 谁喜欢(吃)羊肉? Mrs. Bird does. 伯德夫人喜欢。

Does Mr. Bird like chicken? 伯德先生喜欢鸡肉吗?

No, he doesn't. He doesn't like chicken at all. 不,他不喜欢。他一点儿也不喜欢鸡肉。

Mr. Bird likes potatoes, but Mrs. Bird doesn't. 伯德先生喜欢土豆,但是伯德夫人不喜欢。
I don't like potatoes, either.

我也不喜欢土豆。

# 🎦 词汇学习 Word study

### 1. too adv.

也,还(常用于肯定句,有时也用于疑问句,但不能用于否定句。常见于句末,而且 too 前常有逗号;如果不在句末,too 前后都应当有逗号):

I like lamb, too.

我也喜欢小羊肉。

Can I come, too?

我也来,行吗?

I, too, have been to Shanghai.

我也到过上海。

### 2. either adv.

也,而且(一般用于否定句,位于句末,前面通常有逗号):

He doesn't like the house, and I don't like it, either.

他不喜欢这所房子,我也不喜欢。

If you do not go, I shall not go, either.

如果你不去,那么我也不去。

I haven't seen the film and my sister hasn't either.

我没有看过那部电影,我妹妹也没看过。

# 练习答案 Key to written exercises

### Lesson 50

A

- 1 He likes coffee, but I don't.
- 2 She likes tea, but he doesn't.
- 3 He is eating some bread, but she isn't.
- 4 She can type very well, but he can't.
- 5 They are working hard, but we aren't.

6 He is reading a magazine, but I am not.

В

Yes, he does.He likes cabbage, but he doesn't want any.

Yes, he does.
He likes lettuce, but he doesn't want any.

3 Yes, I do.
I like peas, but I don't want any.

4 Yes, she does.
She likes beans, but she doesn't want any.

5 Yes, I do.I like bananas, but I don't want any.

6 Yes, he does.
He likes oranges, but he doesn't want any.

7 Yes, he does.
He likes apples, but he doesn't want any.

8 Yes, she does.
She likes pears, but she doesn't want any.

9 Yes, I do.
I like grapes, but I don't want any.

10 Yes, she does.
She likes peaches, but she doesn't want any.

## Lessons $51 \sim 52$

# ☐ 课文详注 Further notes on the text

1. Where do you come from? 你是哪国人?

问对方是什么地方人。come from 表示来源或籍贯。也可说: Where are you from? 在第7课中出现过类似的句子。

2. What's the climate like in your country? 你们国家的气候怎么样?

句中 like 是介词,不是动词,它的宾语是 What。又如: What's the weather like in spring? climate 指某一地区数年间的天气情况; weather 是指某个特定的时间内晴、雨、风、雪变化。对于这类问题的回答可以是 It's very pleasant (很好)或 It rains sometimes (有时下雨)。这里的 it 均指天气。

3. It's often windy in March. 3 月里常常刮风。

表示在某个月份里通常用介词 in。类似用 in 的时间短语课文中还有 in April(在 4 月), in June(在 6 月), in September(在 9 月)等等。

often(经常), always(总是,老是), sometimes(有时)都是课文中出现的表示非确定频度的副词。这些副词一般用来回答用 how often 提问的问题。

## 画 语法 Grammar in use

What... (be, look, etc.) like?

我们把 What ... like? 这一句型用于询问事物的状况,例如 天气、气候等:

What's the weather like today? 今天天气怎么样? What's it like today?

今天怎么样?

What's the climate like in your country?

你们国家气候怎么样?

或询问人物或事物的外观或特征:

What's your brother like?

你兄弟是个什么样子?

What's your house like?

你的房子是什么样的?

许多形容词可用以回答 What...like? 这样的问题,并可根据上下文给以笼统的或确切的信息。例如课文中表示天气或气候的形容词有 pleasant(宜人的), windy(有风的), hot(热的), cold(冷的), warm(温暖的)等等。

## 词汇学习 Word study

1. sometimes adv.

有时,间或:

It is sometimes hot and sometimes cold.

天气时冷时热。

Sometimes he visits his aunt who lives nearby.

他有时会去看望他那住在附近的婶婶。

- 2. pleasant adj.
- (1) 令人愉快的;舒适合意的;

The climate in my hometown is always pleasant.

我家乡的气候总是宜人而舒爽。

This study is pleasant to work in.

在这个书房里工作令人感到舒适。

(2)(人或其外表、举止等)讨人喜欢的;(性情等)和蔼可亲的:

106

She's such a pleasant girl.

她真是个可爱的姑娘。

Andrew seemed very pleasant on the phone.

安德鲁在电话里显得很和蔼可亲。



## 练习答案 Key to written exercises

### Lesson 52

Α

- 1 We come from Germany, but Dimitri comes from Greece.
- 2 I like cold weather, but he likes warm weather.
- 3 He comes from the U.S., but she comes from England.
- 4 She doesn't like the winter, but she likes the summer.
- 5 I come from Norway, but you come from Spain.
- 6 Stella comes from Spain, but Hans and Karl come from Germany.
- 7 We don't come from Spain. We come from Brazil.

В

1 Where does she come from?

Does she come from England?

No, she doesn't come from England. She comes from the U.S.

What nationality is she?

She's American.

2 Where do they come from?

Do they come from France?

No, they don't come from France. They come from England.

What nationality are they?

They're English.

3 Where does he come from?

Does he come from France?

No, he doesn't come from France. He comes from Germany.

What nationality is he?

He's German.

4 Where does he come from?

Does he come from Italy?

No, he doesn't come from Italy. He comes from Greece.

What nationality is he?

He's Greek.

5 Where do they come from?

Do they come from Greece?

No, they don't come from Greece. They come from Italy.

What nationality are they?

They're Italian.

6 Where do they come from?

Do they come from Brazil?

No, they don't come from Brazil. They come from Norway.

What nationality are they?

They're Norwegian.

7 Where do they come from?

Do they come from Norway?

No, they don't come from Norway. They come from Greece.

What nationality are they?

They're Greek.

8 Where does she come from?

Does she come from Italy?

No, she doesn't come from Italy. She comes from Spain.

What nationality is she?

She's Spanish.

9 Where does she come from?

Does she come from Norway?

No, she doesn't come from Norway. She comes from France.

What nationality is she?

She's French.

10 Where does he come from?

Does he come from the U.S.?

No, he doesn't come from the U.S. He comes from Brazil.

What nationality is he?

He's Brazilian.

## Lessons $53 \sim 54$

## 🔲 课文详注 Further notes on the text

1. in the North = in the north of Englando

North 的首字母大写,是因为它单独使用,特指英国的北部。表示一个国家或地区的方位词一般要大写。本课中的方位词均表示国家的一部分:

in the East 在东部

in the West 在西方

in the South 在南方

但是,仅仅表示方位意义的方位词不需大写。如:

a north wind 北风

a south window 南窗

- 2. Which seasons do you like best? 你最喜欢哪些季节? 句中的 best 是副词 well 的最高级,作状语,修饰 like。
- 3. The sun rises early and sets late. 太阳升得早而落得晚。

句中的 early 和 late 都是副词,分别修饰动词 rises 和 sets,作状语。注意 the sun 中定冠词的用法。在英语中,表示世界上独一无二的东西(如太阳、月亮、世界、地球、天空、宇宙)的名词之前通常需加定冠词。

4. favourite subject of conversation, 最喜欢谈论的话题。

英国人见面时谈话通常是从天气开始的。一方面这与英国的自然地理情况有关,另一方面则与英国人的民族性格有关。谈论天气是任何人都可接受的话题,而且这可避免介人令人尴尬的或侵入私人领域的话题。

## □ 语法 Grammar in use

like (v.) 与 like (prep.)

like(v.) 表示"喜欢"、"想要"(请参见 Lessons 47~48 词汇部分),而 like(prep.)表示"像……一样":

His car is like mine.

他的汽车跟我的那辆一样。

She is very like her sister.

她和她姐姐相像极了。

The new building looks like a big bird.

那座新建筑看上去像是一只大鸟。

# 🎦 词汇学习 Word study

- 1. mild adj.
- (1)(天气等)温暖的;暖和的:

They had an exceptionally mild winter last year.

他们那儿去年冬天出奇地暖和。

The climate in the South is always mild and pleasant.

南方的气候总是温和宜人。

(2)(性情等)温和的:

John is a mild man who never raises his voice.

约翰是一个温和的人,他从不抬高嗓门说话。

I like his gentle and mild voice.

我喜欢他那温和而轻柔的声音。

(3)(食物等)味淡的:

Try this mild curry.

试试这种淡味咖喱。

He likes to smoke mild cigars.

他喜欢抽淡味雪茄烟。

### 2. rise v.

(1)(日、月等)升起;上升:

The sun rises in the east.

太阳从东方升起。

The curtain rises at 8.00 p.m.

剧在晚上8点钟开演。

(2)(河水、物价、温度等)上涨;升高;增加:

The level of the river is still rising.

河水水位仍在上涨。

(3) 起身;起床:

My mother always rises early.

我母亲总是很早起床。

The house rose to the singers.

全场起立向歌唱演员们致意。

Key to written exercises

# **赵** 练习答案

### Lesson 54

Α

- 1 Does the sun set late? The sun doesn't set late.
- 2 Does he like ice cream? He doesn't like ice cream.
- 3 Does Mrs. Jones want a biscuit? She doesn't want a biscuit.
- 4 Does Jim come from England?
  He doesn't come from England.

- Where does he come from? Is he Australian?
   Yes. He's Australian. He comes from Australia.
- Where does he come from? Is he Austrian?
  Yes. He's Austrian. He comes from Austria.
- 3 Where does he come from? Is he Canadian?
  Yes. He's Canadian. He comes from Canada.
- 4 Where do they come from? Are they Chinese? Yes. They're Chinese. They come from China.
- 5 Where does he come from? Is he Finnish?
  Yes. He's Finnish. He comes from Finland.
- 6 Where does she come from? Is she Indian? Yes. She's Indian. She comes from India.
- 7 Where do they come from? Are they Japanese?
  Yes. They are Japanese. They come from Japan.
- 8 Where do they come from? Are they Nigerian?
  Yes. They're Nigerian. They come from Nigeria.
- 9 Where does she come from? Is she Turkish?
  Yes. She's Turkish. She comes from Turkey.
- 10 Where does she come from? Is she Korean?
  Yes. She's Korean. She comes from Korea.

## Lessons $55 \sim 56$

# 🛄 课文详注 Further notes on the text

1. go to work, 上班。

由动词 go 引导的短语课文中还有: go to school (上学), go to bed (上床睡觉)。请注意 work, school 以及 hed 之前不带任何 冠词。

2. stay at home, 呆在家里。

与 stay home 在意思上相差无几。前者中的 home 是名词,后者中的 home 是副词。

3. do the housework, 料理家务。

housework 是不可数名词。请比较: do the homework (做作业)。

4. at night, 在夜里。

如果说某日夜里,则用介词 on:

on the night of June 2 在6月2日的夜里

# 画 语法 Grammar in use

一般现在时(2)

(请参见 Lessons 47~48 语法部分。)

一般现在时用于表示一个习惯动作、有规律的行为以及永恒的现象。一般与时间频度副词和时间短语连用。这些时间短语 有:

every day/week/month/year 每日/周/月/年 in the morning/afternoon/evening 在上午/下午/晚上 at noon/night 在正午/夜里

第3人称单数的谓语动词需加以变位,这可分为几种情况:

114

(1) 直接加-s,如:

come—comes

arrive-arrives

(2) 以-sh,-ch,-o 以及-s 结尾的动词加-es,如:

wash - washes

go-goes

watch - watches

do-does

(3)以辅音加-y结尾的动词,把-y改成-i,再加-es;而元音加-y 结尾的动词,只加-s即可:

hurry—hurries

carry—carries

play-plays

stay-stays

# رشراً

## 词汇学习 Word study

- 1. arrive v.
- (1) 到达;到来:

We arrived home early.

我们很早就到家了。

The train is expected to arrive in London at 8.20 p.m.

火车预计在晚上8点20分抵达伦敦。

(2)(时间等)来临;(婴儿)出生:

At last the day of graduation arrived.

毕业的那一天终于来临。

Elizabeth's baby arrived at midnight.

伊丽莎白的婴儿是在午夜时分降生的。

### 2. live v.

### (1) 居住;生活:

Frank lives in Paris. 弗兰克居住在巴黎。 Where do you live? 你住在哪儿?

### (2) 活;生存:

Fish can't live long out of water. 鱼离开水活不了多久。 My grandmother lived until she was 94. 我祖母活到了94岁。

### (3) 过生活;享受生活乐趣;

At 40 he was just beginning to live. 他到 40 岁才刚刚开始过上富有意义的生活。 You haven't lived till you've been to Paris. 你没到过巴黎就算不上享受过生活。

### (4) 靠……生活(by/on):

He lives by playing the violin.
他靠拉小提琴为生。
He lives on the fortune left to him by his father.
他靠他父亲给他留下的财产生活。

### 3. stay v.

## (1) 呆在,停留:

Mrs. White stays at home every day. 怀特太太每天都呆在家中。

### (2) 逗留;暂住:

We were staying at the same hotel. 我们住在同一家饭店。

### (3) 持续;保留:

116

# The house has to stay exactly as it was. 这所房子必须完全保持原来的样子。

# Ø

# 练习答案 Key to written exercises

### Lesson 56

Α

- 1 The children go to school in the morning.
- 2 Their father takes them to school.
- 3 Mrs. Sawyer stays at home.
- 4 She *does* the housework.
- 5 She always eats her lunch at noon.

В

- 1 What does she do in the morning?
  She always makes the bed in the morning.
- What does he do in the morning?
  He always shaves in the morning.
- 3 What do they do in the evening?
  They sometimes listen to the stereo in the evening.
- 4 What does he do every day?
  He always cleans the blackboard every day.
- 5 What do they do at night?
  They always go to bed early at night.
- 6 What does she do every day?
  She usually washes the dishes every day.
- 7 What do they do in the afternoon?
  They usually type some letters in the afternoon.
- 8 What does it do every day?

It usually drinks some milk every day.

- 9 What do they do in the evening?
  They sometimes watch television in the evening.
- 10 What does she do at noon?
  She always eats her lunch at noon.
- What does he do in the evening?He often reads his newspaper in the evening.

## Lessons 57~58

↓ 课文详注 Further notes on the text

### 1. by car, 乘汽车。

by(乘坐)表示"乘坐(某种交通工具)",但它必须与动词连用。 表交通工具的名词前不加冠词:

by boat 乘船 by bus 乘公共汽车 by plane 乘飞机 by sea 乘船

### 2. on foot, 步行。

# 薑∥ 语法 Grammar in use

### 一般现在时与现在进行时

一般现在时表示一般的动作或不断重复发生的动作;现在进行 时表示说话时正在发生的动作,动作还没有完成。简单图示如 下:

$\longleftarrow \cdots \cdots \cdots \cdots \qquad I   qo   \cdots  \cdots  \cdots \longrightarrow$		
过去	现在	将来
I am doing		
过去	现在	 将来

一般现在时表示永久的情况;进行时表示暂时的情况。请比 较:

(Jane works very hard most of the time.

简大多工作努力。 June is working hard today.

(His parents live in Rome.

他父母住在罗马。
He's living with some friends now.
他现在与一些朋友们住在一起。

进行时只用于表示动作或偶尔发生的事件(We are eating, it is raining 等等)。有些动词(如 like, want, know 等)不是动作动 词,因此不能用进行时态,如不能说 1 am knowing 或 We are liking,而只能说 I know 或 We like .

一般现在时表达某个习惯性动作,通常与时间频度副词连用, 如 usually, always, often, sometimes, never 等;现在进行时表 示此时此刻正在进行的动作,一般与 now, at the moment, today, this afternoon, this evening, tonight 等连用。如:

We usually watch television at night. But we are listening to the stereo tonight.

我们通常晚上看电视。但是今晚我们正在听立体声节目。

# 词汇学习 Word study

### play

(1) v. 玩,做游戏:

The children are playing in the garden.

孩子们正在花园里玩耍。

(2) v. 参加(体育活动、比赛等);

Let's play chess! 咱们来下棋吧!

He likes playing basketball.

他喜欢打篮球。

### (3) n. 玩要;娱乐:

All work and no play makes Jack a dull boy. 只工作而不娱乐会使人变呆的。

### 2. cook

### (1) v. 烹调;煮,烧;

She cooked a lovely meal for her husband.

她为丈夫做了一顿美餐。

The beef is not cooked enough.

牛肉煮得不够熟。

### (2) n. 厨子,炊事员:

Tom works as a cook in a local restaurant.

汤姆在当地的一家餐馆当厨子。

My dad is really a good cook.

我爸爸烹调手艺特棒。

# Ø

## 练习答案 Key to written exercises

### Lesson 58

Α

- 1 She usually drinks tea in the morning, but this morning, she is drinking coffee.
- 2 They usually play in the garden in the afternoon, but this afternoon, they are playing in the park.
- 3 He usually washes the dishes at night, but tonight he is washing clothes.

- 1 What does she usually do in the morning? She usually drinks tea in the morning. What is she doing this morning? She is drinking coffee.
- What do they usually do in the afternoon?
  They usually play in the garden in the afternoon.
  What are they doing this afternoon?
  They are swimming in the river.
- 3 What do you usually do in the evening?
  I usually cook a meal in the evening.
  What are you doing this evening?
  I am reading a book this evening.
- What do you usually do at night?We usually watch television at night.What are you doing tonight?We are listening to the stereo tonight.

## Lessons 59~60

# 🛄 课文详注 Further notes on the text

1. writing paper, 信纸。

paper 意为"纸"、"纸张"时是不可数名词,一张纸应是 a sheet of paper或 a piece of paper。类似的名词还有: glue (a bottle of glue 一瓶胶水); chalk (a box/piece of chalk 一盒/枝粉笔); ink (a bottle of ink 一瓶墨水)。

- 2. I only have small boxes. 我只有小盒的。 boxes 后省略了 of chalk。
- 3. Do you want one? 您要一盒吗? one 代替 one small box of chalk。
- 4. What else do you want? 您还要什么吗?

What else...? 可以看成是表示疑问的一个句式,意思是"还有什么……吗?"else 常接在疑问代词、不定代词及疑问副词后面,表示"此外"、"别的"、"其他的"。又如:

Who else is from New York? 还有谁是从纽约来的? When else shall we meet again? 什么其他的时间我们再见面? What else did he say? 他还说了些什么?

# 语法 Grammar in use

### 完全动词 have(1)

完全动词 have 的意思相当于"拥有"、"具有",其疑问句、肯定句及否定句形式分别如下:

| Do you/we/they have any...? | 你(们)/我们/他(她)们有一些……吗? | Yes, I/we/they have some... | 是的,我/我们/他(她们)有一些…… | No, I/we/they do not/don't have any... | 不,我/我们/他(她)们没有一些……

have 当"拥有"讲时,可用于所有的一般时态,却不能用于进行时态(is having, are having 等).

## 词汇学习 Word study

- 1. change n.
- (1) 找头;零钱:

Here is your change.

这是你的零头。

I have no change about me.

我身边没有零钱。

(2) 变化;转换:

Roast beef is a welcome change from the usual tasteless food.

烤牛肉与平素无味的饭菜比起来实在是一种让人欣喜的 变化。

Let's go to a French restaurant for a change.

咱们去家法国餐馆吧,换换口味。

- 2. size n.
- (1) (衣服、鞋、帽等的)尺码,号:

What size does she want?

她想要几号的?

This blouse is your size.

这件衬衣是你这号尺码的。

### (2)(尺寸、体积、规模、身材等的)大小;(数量)多少;

There are houses of all sizes in that town.

那个镇上有着大大小小各式房子。

We have chosen some boys all of the same size.

我们选出了一些个头一般高的男孩子。

# 乡 练习答案 Key to written exercises

### Lesson 60

Δ

- 1 I don't have any grapes, but I have some peaches.
- 2 I don't have any tomatocs, but I have some potatoes.
- 3 I don't have any mince, but I have some steak.
- 4 I don't have any glue, but I have some ink.
- 5 I don't have any envelopes, but I have some writing paper.

В

- 1 I don't have any honey, but I have some jam.
- 2 Penny and I don't have any beans, but we have some potatoes.
- 3 Penny and Sam don't have any wine, but they have some beer.
- 4 Sam and I don't have any bread, but we have some biscuits.
- 5 Sam and Penny don't have any grapes, but they have some bananas.
- 6 I don't have any mince, but I have some steak.
- 7 The children don't have any butter, but they have some eggs.

- 8 I don't have any lettuces, but I have some cabbages.
- 9 Penny and I don't have any beans, but we have some peas.

## Lessons 61~62

# 课文详注 Further notes on the text

1. fell ill, 感觉病了; look ill, 看起来有病。

前者指自我感觉,后者指外表形象。ill 是表语,look 和 feel 都是系动词,可像 am/is/are 那样,后面跟形容词。

so he must stay in bed for a week. ……因此他必须卧床休息一周。

so 表示"因此"、"所以"。for 可以引出一段时间,表示某个动作 持续多少时间。又如:

for two hours each day 每天两小时

- 3. That's good news for Jimmy. 对吉米来说,这可是个好消息。 句中的 news 是不可数名词,不是复数形式。在英语中,有些以-s 结尾的名词可作单数使用,又如: mumps(腮腺炎), measles (麻疹)。
- 4. She has a headache. 她头疼。

根据现代英语习惯, headache 前常用不定冠词 a。 其他 ache 型的复合词也多用不定冠词,如: an earache(耳疼), a toothache (牙疼), a stomach ache(胃疼)。

- 5. take/have an aspirin, 服/吃一片阿司匹林。
- 6. have a temperature, 发烧。

# ■ 语法 Grammar in use

1. 完全动词 have(2)

have(和 have got)常与表示疼痛和疾病的名词连用。关于与这种名词连用的不定冠词 a/an 的用法可有几种情况:

(1) 必须用不定冠词,如 a cold(感冒), a headache(头疼), a sore

throat(嗓子疼):

I have a headache/cold. 我头疼/感冒了。

(2) 不定冠词可用可不用,如 catch (a) cold(患感冒), have (a) backache/stomach ache/toothache (患背痛/胃痛/牙疼等);

> I've had (a) toothache all night. 我牙疼了一整夜。

(3) 复数形式的疾病名称前面不用冠词。如 measles (麻疹), mumps(流行性腮腺炎),shingles(带状疱疹);

Most children are in bed with mumps.

大多数孩子们都得了流行性腮腺炎,躺在床上。

(4)被认为不可数的疾病名称前面不用冠词,如 flu(流行性感 冒),gout(痛风),hepatitis(肝炎)等:

I was in bed with flu for ten days.

我因患流感,卧床10天。

the 也可以与flu, measles 和 mumps 等词连用,如:

He's got the flu/the measles/the mumps. 他得了流感/麻疹/腮腺炎。

### 2. must (2)

must 是情态助动词(如 can ~样),它本身没有时态、性或数的 变化,也不能单独作谓语动词(简短回答除外)。must 表示"必 要性",即某人必须做某事。(请参见 Lessons 29~30 语法部 分。)如:

(Must she see a doctor, or take an aspirin?

她必须去看病或服用阿司匹林吗? She mustn't see a doctor. She must take an aspirin.

「她不该去找大夫看病。她必须服用阿司匹林。

# √→ 词汇学习 Word study

### 1. feel v.

(1) 觉得;感到;意识到;

I could feel rain on my face.
她感觉到雨点打在我的脸上。
He's feeling a little better today.
他今天感觉好点了。

(2) 摸,触;(客体)给人某种感觉;

He felt his pockets and then took out a small box. 他摸摸他的口袋,然后取出一个小盒子。 The silk feels very smooth. 丝绸摸上去很滑爽。

(3) 认为;以为;相信:

I feel that he has made a mistake. 我认为他犯了一个错误。 I feel it unnecessary to do so. 我认为这样做没必要。

### 2. remember v.

(1) 记得;回忆;

Can Mrs. Williams remember the doctor's telephone number?

威廉斯太太记得起医生的电话号码吗?
I remember he used to dress in a blue suit.
我记得他从前常穿一套蓝色衣服。

(2) 记住;牢记;不忘记:

I tried hard to remember the long passage of Shakespeare. 我努力记住莎士比亚的大段说白。

Remember your appointment with the dentist.

### 别忘了你和牙医的预约。



## 练习答案 Key to written exercises

### Lesson 62

A

- 1 He has a cold.
- 2 He can't go to work.
- He is not well.
- 4 He feels ill.
- 5 He must see a doctor.
- 6 He does not like doctors.

В

What's the matter with Elizabeth?Does she have an carache?No, she doesn't have an earache.She has a headache.So she must take an aspirin.

- What's the matter with George?Does he have a headache?No, he doesn't have a headache.He has an earache.So he must see a doctor.
- What's the matter with Jim?Does he have a stomach ache?No, he doesn't have a stomach ache.He has a toothache.So he must see a dentist.

- What's the matter with Jane?
  Does she have a toothache?
  No, she doesn't have a toothache.
  She has a stomach ache.
  So she must take some medicine.
- 5 What's the matter with Sam?
  Does he have a stomach ache?
  No, he doesn't have a stomach ache.
  He has a temperature.
  So he must go to bed.
- What's the matter with Dave?
  Does he have a headache?
  No, he doesn't have a headache.
  He has flu.
  So he must stay in bed.
- 7 What's the matter with Jimmy?
  Does he have a headache?
  No, he doesn't have a headache.
  He has measles.
  So we must call the doctor.
- 8 What's the matter with Susan?Does she have an earache?No, she doesn't have an earache.She has mumps.So we must call the doctor.

## Lessons 63~64

## ☐ 课文详注 Further notes on the text

1. play with, 玩……(东西)。

The children are playing with a toy car in the garden. 孩子们正在花园玩一辆玩具汽车。

2. make a noise, 搞出声响。

noise 是抽象名词。抽象名词是不可数的,前面加不定冠词 a 并不意味 1、2、3、4 等数目,只是赋予那个名词具体的含义,如一次、一种、一例、一番等。又如:

have a rest 休息一下 take a look at . . . 看一眼……

3. lean out of the window, 把身子探出窗外。
out of 是介词短语,与 in 或 into 相对.表示"离开"、"脱离"。

# ■ 语法 Grammar in use

### 禁令

don't与 mustn't都可用来表示禁令。用 mustn't表示"禁止"或"不许可",语气比较强烈。例如:

(Don't take this medicine!

| 不要吃这个药!
| You mustn't take this medicine!
| 你不许吃这个药!
| [Don't call the doctor!
| 不要给大夫打电话!
| You mustn't call the doctor!
| 你不许给大夫打电话!

| Don't talk in the library! | 请勿在图书馆交谈! | You mustn't talk in the library! | 你不许在图书馆内交谈! | Oon't lean out of the window! | 别把头或身子探出窗外! | You mustn't lean out of the window! | 你不许把头或身子探出窗外!

# ② 词汇学习 Word study

### 1. keep v.

(1) 使保持某状态;保持:

Keep the room warm. 使房间保持温暖。 Keep the fire burning. 不要让火熄灭了。

(2) 保存;保留:

He would not be able to keep his job. 他恐怕保不住他那份工作了。 If you like it, just keep it. 你如果喜欢的话,那把它留下来吧。

(3) 保守;储藏:

Please keep this secret.

请保守这一秘密。

Would you keep my things for me while I'm away? 在我离开的这段时间里,你能为我保管一下东西吗?

- 2. remain v.
- (1) 留下;停留:

You'd better remain at home.

你最好留在家里。

We're going to remain in Rome for another two days.

我们准备再在罗马逗留两天。

### (2) 保持不变:

It will remain cold for a couple of days.

天气还将持续冷几天。

Most people remained silent at the meeting.

多数人在会上保持沉默。

# B

## 练习答案 Key to written exercises

### Lesson 64

Α

- 1 Jimmy is better now but he mustn't get up yet.
- 2 Jimmy has a cold and he must stay in bed.
- 3 Jimmy can get up for two hours each day.
- 4 Jimmy often reads in bed.
- 5 Jimmy listens to the stereo, too.
- 6 Jimmy doesn't feel ill now.

В

- 1 Don't take any aspirins! You mustn't take any aspirins!
- 2 Don't take this medicine!
  You mustn't take this medicine!
- 3 Don't call the doctor!
  You mustn't call the doctor!
- 4 Don't play with matches!

134

- You mustn't play with matches!
- 5 Don't talk in the library!
  You mustn't talk in the library!
- 6 Don't make a noise! You mustn't make a noise!
- 7 Don't drive so quickly! You mustn't drive so quickly!
- 8 Don't lean out of the window!
  You mustn't lean out of the window!
- 9 Don't break that vase! You mustn't break that vase!

### Lessons 65~66

## 🛄 课文详注 Further notes on the text

1. What are you going to do this evening, Jill? 今晚你打算干什么, 吉尔?

由 every, this, next 等词开头的时间状语前面通常不加介词。

I'm going to meet some friends, Dad. 我打算去看几个朋友,爸爸。

dad 和 mum 前如没有所有格代词或名词所有格作修饰语,就 特指自己的父母亲,要大写。father 和 mather 也是如此。

3. Jill's eighteen years old, Tom. 吉尔都 18 岁了,汤姆。

表示"几岁",一般由基数词 + year(s) old 构成。在口语中, year(s) old 往往可以省去,而只用数字表示年龄。如:

She is eighteen .

她 18 岁。

4. That's all right. 不用谢。

当别人表示感谢时,可以作出如是回答。还可以说 You're welcome/Not at all/Don't mention it。

5. Bye-bye. 再见。

非正式的告别语,语气较随便。非正式的告别语还有 So long, See you 或 I'll be seeing you 等。正式的告别语是 Goodbye,而 夜里向人告别时用 Good night。

## 圖 语法 Grammar in use

### 1. 反身代词

(1) 当宾语和主语是同一个人时,一般需要用反身代词:

He cut himself when he was shaving this morning.

今天早晨刮胡子时,他把脸刮破了。

The old lady is talking to herself.

那位老妇人正在自言自语。

(2) 反身代词也可与名词连用,表达"就是那个人而不是别人"的 意思:

We went there ourselves.

我们自己去那儿了。

They wanted to finish the work themselves.

他们想靠自己来完成这项工作。

#### 2. 时间与日期

(1) 钟点表达法

在某个钟点的 1 到 30 分钟内,我们常用 past 表示,如 8 点 20 分时我们可以说 twenty past eight;如果时间是在某个钟点的 31 分到下一个整点,我们则常用介词 to,但要注意钟点及分钟的变换。如 6 点 47 分我们通常会将之换算为 7 点差 13 分,即 thirteen to seven。

以上两种情况也可以用直接读出钟点和分钟的方式来表达:

eight twenty 8点20分

six forty-seven 6点47分

表示在什么时间通常都需用介词 at;

He goes to school at 7.30.

他7点半上学。

(2) 通常使用介词 on 表示星期几(如 on Monday 在星期一)、一天中的某段时间(如 on Monday morning 在星期一早上)、日期(如 on April 1st 在 4 月 1 日)、星期几+日期(如 on Monday, April 1st 在 4 月 1 日,星期一)、具体时间(如 on that day 在那一天)、周年纪念日(如 on your birthday 在你的生日)以及节日(如 on Christmas Day 在圣诞节)等。

请看下面的例句:

(What's the time? | 几点了? | It's half past ten.

(When must I come home?

我必须什么时候回家?

You must come home at five o' clock.

【你必须 5 点钟回家。

When must be telephone you?

他必须何时给你打电话?

He must telephone me at a quarter to three.

【他必须在3点差1刻时给我打电话。

(When't your birthday?

你的生日是在什么时候?

My birthday's on July the 18th.

我的生日是7月18日。

## ☐ 词汇学习 Word study

### 1. enjoy v.

(1) 过得快活:

She enjoyed herself in the vacation. 她假期过得愉快。

(2) 乐于;喜爱:

I enjoy your company. 我乐意与你呆在一起。

(3) 享有,享受:

We all enjoy our legal rights. 我们都享有自己的合法权利。

#### 2. hear v.

#### (I) 听见:

He listened but could hear nothing. 他留神地听,但什么也没有听到。 Do you hear? 你听见了吗?

#### (2) 倾听, 认真听:

Please hear her. 请听她讲。 We'd better hear what he has to say. 我们最好还是听听他要说些什么。

## 练习答案 Key to written exercises

#### Lesson 66

A

- 1 I am going to see him at ten o'clock.
- 2 It often rains in November.
- 3 Where do you come from? I come from France.
- 4 I always go to work in the morning.
- 5 What's the climate like in your country?
- 6 It's cold in winter and hot in summer.

В

- 1 She must go to the library at 1.15.
- 2 Sam and I must see the dentist at 3.45.
- 3 I must type this letter at 2.00.
- 4 Sam and Penny must see the boss at 1.30.
- 5 George must take his medicine at 3.15.

- 6 Sophic must arrive in London at 2.30.
- 7 You must eatch the bus at 3.30.
- 8 I must arrive there at 3.00.
- 9 They must come home at 2.15.
- 10 I must meet Sam at 1.45.
- 11 He must telephone me at 2.45.

### Lessons 67~68

## 🛄 课文详注 Further notes on the text

1. Were you at the butcher's? 刚才您在肉店里吗?

at the butcher's = at the butcher's shop。在英文中,表示店铺、住宅、公共机构、公共建筑物以及教堂的名字或某人家时,名词所有格后常不出现它所修饰的名词:

the greengrocer's (shop) 蔬菜水果店 the hairdresser's (shop) 理发店 the stationer's (shop) 文具店 the doctor's (office) 诊所 my mother's (house) 我妈妈家里 St. Paul's (Church) 圣保罗教堂

- 2. be absent from, 不在,缺席。
- 3. the country = the countryside, 乡下。
  country 表示"农村"时,前面一定要加定冠词 the。

## ■ 语法 Grammar in use

### 一般过去时(1)

be(am/is/are)的过去式是 was/were:

I/he/she/it	was/wasn't	was	I/he/she/it?
we/you/they	were/weren't	were	wc/you/they?

在英文中,过去发生的而现在已经结束的动作要用一般过去时来表示。be 动词的过去式不规则,第1人称与第3人称单数用 was,其他情况用 were。

用 be 动词的一般现在时形式的一般疑问句及特殊疑问句迄今

已介绍过,其过去时形式也一样,只是动词 be 在形式上变为 was 或 were。请看以下例句:

Was Mrs. Johnson at the butcher's?

约翰逊夫人在肉店吗? No, she wasn't.

(Were you at school or at church on January 1st?

| 1 月 1 号你在学校还是上教堂了? | I wasn't at school on January 1st. I was at church.

<sup>1</sup>我 1 月 1 号没上学。我上教堂做礼拜了。

When was he absent from school?

他何时缺课了?

He was absent on Monday, Tuesday, Wednesday and Thursday.

[他周一、周二、周三和周四缺课了。

(Where were you on Sunday?

周日你在哪儿? I was at church on Sunday.

· 我周日在教堂做礼拜。

# 词汇学习 Word study

### 1. spend

(1) 花(时间等);度过;

Where are the Johnsons going to spend the weekend?

约翰逊一家准备到哪儿去度这个周末?

I hope that you wouldn't spend so much time watching television.

我希望你不要花这么多的时间看电视。

#### (2) 用(钱),花费;

I'm going to spend all my money this weekend! 这个周末我要把我所有的钱都花掉!

At present, more and more people have come to realize that more money should be spent on health and education. 目前,越来越多的人已开始认识到:应该在健康和教育方面多花些钱。

#### 2. country

#### (1) n. 国家;国土;故乡;

China is a country with a large population.

中国是一个人口众多的国家。

India, a former British colony, is now a fully independent country.

曾一度为英国殖民地的印度如今已是一个完全独立的国家。

#### (2) n. [the ~]乡下,乡村:

His mother has always wanted to live in the country. 他的母亲一直以来都想居住在乡间。

How many days are they going to spend in the country? 他们准备在乡下过几天?

### (3) adj. 乡下的;乡村风味的;

I prefer country life to life in the city.

乡村生活与城市生活相比,我更喜欢乡村生活。

After nearly thirty years in the city, he's still country. 他在城里住了将近三十年,可还是土气十足。



## 练习答案 Key to written exercises

#### Lesson 68

A

- 1 I was at / church on Sunday.
- 2 I was at the office on Monday.
- 3 My son was at \( \school \) school on Tuesday.
- 4 My wife was at the butcher's on Wednesday.
- 5 She was at the grocer's on Thursday.
- 6 My daughter was in the country on Friday.
- 7 I was at / home on Saturday.

В

- When was Torn at the hairdresser's?He was at the hair-dresser's on Thursday.
- When was Mrs. Jones at the butcher's?
  She was at the butcher's on Wednesday.
- 3 When was he at home?
  He was at home on Sunday.
- 4 When was Penny at the baker's?
  She was at the baker's on Friday.
- 5 When was Mrs. Williams at the grocer's?
  She was at the grocer's on Monday.
- 6 When was Nicola at the office?
  She was at the office on Tuesday.

### Lessons 69~70

## **即** 课文详注 Further notes on the text

1. hundreds of,数以百计的。

这是用来表示不定数量的复数形式。类似的结构还有thousands of(数以千计的), millions of(数以万计的)。但必须注意:说 five hundred(五百,500), six thousand(六千,6,000), two million(两百万,200 万)等时, hundred, thousand, million这些词因为之前有具体数字而本身不加-s。

2. at the race, 观看比赛。

这里的 at 是"出席"、"在某场合"的意思。

3. Our friends Julie and Jack were there, too. 我们的朋友朱莉和杰克也去了。

Julie and Jack 是 Our friends 的同位语。

4. car number fifteen, 第 15 号车。

在表示编了号的东西时,可以用基数词表示顺序:

Lesson 67 第 67 课

Page 2 第2页

Bus No. 332 第 332 路公共汽车

Question 10 第 10 个问题

## 画 语法 Grammar in use

用介词 at, on 和 in 的时间短语

(1) 用介词 at 的时间短语通常可表示:确切的时间(如 at 10 o'clock 10 点钟时),用餐时间(如 at lunchtime 午餐时),其他时刻(如 at noon 中午时),节日(如 at Christmas 圣诞节时),年龄(如 at the age of 27 27 岁时)等。

介词 at 可表示地点,通常用于某个小地点之前:

at the bus-stop 在公共汽车站

at the railway station 在火车站

at the butcher's 在肉店

at school 在学校

at the office 在办公室

at home 在家

- (2) 介词 on 用于周和月份中的任何一天之前。请参见 Lessons 65~66语法部分。
- (3) 用介词 in 的时间短语通常可表示:一天中的某段时间(如 in the evening 在晚上),月份(如 in March 在 3 月),年份(如 in 1997 在 1997 年),季节(如 in spring 在春天),世纪(如 in the 20th century 在 20 世纪),节日(如 in Easter week 在复活节那一周),时期(如 in the holidays 在假期里)等。

### 词汇学习 Word study

- 1. stand v.
- (1) 站立,起立:

We were standing on the right.

我们当时站在右边。

They stood because there were no seats.

没有座位,所以他们只好站着。

(2)(建筑物)直立,耸立;(植物)直立生长:

The white house stands on a hill.

那幢白色的房子耸立在小山上。

Look at the corn standing in the fields!

瞧那长在地里的玉米!

#### 2. finish n.

#### (1) 结束;最后阶段(或部分);

The finish of the race was very exciting.

比赛的最后一个阶段十分激动人心。

At eleven the dinner finally dragged to a finish.

宴会拖到11点才结束。

### (2) 完美,完善;(举止等)优雅;

His dancing lacks finish.

他的舞跳得并不完美。

We hoped that four years of college would give him some finish.

我们希望4年的大学教育会使他有些教养。

## Ø

### 练习答案 Key to written exercises

#### Lesson 70

Α

- 1 We were at the stationer's on Monday.
- 2 We were there at four o'clock.
- 3 They were in Australia in September.
- 4 They were there in spring.
- 5 On November 25th, they were in Canada.
- 6 They were there in 1990.

B

- Where were you and Susan on March 23rd?
   We were at the office on March 23rd.
- Where were Sam and Penny in 1986?
  They were in India in 1986.

- Where were you and Penny on Saturday?
  We were at the baker's on Saturday.
- 4 Where were Sam and Penny in 1993?
  They were in Canada in 1993.
- 5 Where were you and Penny in August?
  We were in Austria in August.
- 6 Where were Sam and Penny on May 25th? They were at home on May 25th.
- 7 Where were you and Penny in December?
  We were in Finland in December.
- 8 Where were you and Sam on February 22nd?
  We were at school on February 22nd.

### Lessons $71 \sim 72$

## 🔲 课文详注 Further notes on the text

1. What's Ron Marston like, Pauline? 波琳,朗·马斯顿是怎样一个人?

What is sb. like? 这一句式可用来询问某人的外貌或品行。就本课的具体情况而言,波琳的回答更多地是指马斯顿的品行如何。

2. He telephoned me four times yesterday...他昨天给我打了 4 次电话……

four times,4次。time 在英语中作不可数名词时表示"时间"; 作可数名词时表示"次数"。请注意英语中次数的表示法:

once 1次 twice 两次 three times 3次

3 次或 3 次以上通常都用基数词 + times 表示:

five times 5次 thirty times 30次

- 3. the day before yesterday, 前天。
- 4. answer the telephone, 接电话。

口语中也常用 answer the phone。类似的短语如:

answer the door/doorbell 应声开门 answer a letter 回信

5. She can't speak to you now! 她现在不能同你讲话!

speak to sb. 意为"与某人说话"。例如打电话时可以说:

May I speak to Pauline, please? 请让波琳接电话好吗? I'd like to speak to Pauline, please, 我想请波琳听电话。

### 6. This is Pauline's mother. 我是波琳的母亲。

This is... 是英美人打电话时表示"我是……"的句式,而不说 I'm...。相关的电话用语如:

This is Mary speaking.

我是玛丽。

This is Edward calling from London.

我是爱德华,现正在伦敦给你打电话。

## ■ 语法 Grammar in use

#### 一般过去时(2)

(请参见 Lessons 67~68 语法部分。)

be 动词以外的动词在一般过去时中一般有两种形式。规则动词一般是在动词后面加-cd,如 answered;以-e 结尾的规则动词加-d,如 telephoned, arrived。另一部分动词的过去式拼写不规则,因此称为不规则动词,如:say--said, do-did。

用一般过去时的句子中常常有表示过去某一时刻的时间状语,如本课中的 yesterday (昨天), the day before yesterday (前天), yesterday morning (昨天上午), yesterday afternoon (昨天下午), yesterday evening (昨天晚上), last night(昨夜)。

# 间汇学习 Word study

#### answer

(1) v. 对……作出反应;响应:

Who answered the telephone?

谁接的电话?

Mary took a few minutes to answer the door.

玛丽拖了几分钟时间才去开门。

#### (2) v. 回答;答复:

I don't think you've answered my question.

我认为你没有回答我的问题。

1 wrote him several letters but couldn't get an answer. 我给他写了好几封信,可都没有回音。

#### (3) n. 答案;解决办法;

Do you know the answer to Question 10?

你知道第10题的答案吗?

This is one of the possible answers to today's environmental problems.

这是有可能解决当今环境问题的办法之一。

# 赵 练习答案 Key to written exercises

#### Lesson 72

Α

- 1 It is raining now. It rained yesterday.
- 2 It is snowing now. It *snowed* yesterday.
- 3 He is boiling some eggs. He boiled some yesterday.
- 4 We are enjoying our lunch. We enjoyed it yesterday, too.

В

- What did they do yesterday?
   They cleaned their shoes yesterday.
- What did he do last night? He opened the box last night.
- 3 What did they do this morning?
  They sharpened their pencils this morning.

- 4 What did she do this evening?
  She turned on the television this evening.
- 5 What did she do last night?
  She listened to the radio last night.
- 6 What did she do yesterday morning?
  She boiled an egg yesterday morning.
- 7 What did they do yesterday afternoon?
  They played a game yesterday afternoon.
- 8 What did he do in the morning the day before yesterday?
  He stayed in bed in the morning the day before yesterday.
- 9 What did she do yesterday evening?
  She telephoned her husband yesterday evening.
- 10 What did she do the night before last?
  She called the doctor the night before last.

### Lessons 73~74

## 课文详注 Further notes on the text

1. She does not know London very well. 她对伦敦不很熟悉。

know ... well 这一短语意为"对……了解"。又如:

I don't know him very well.

我不太了解他。

- 1..., and she lost her way. ……因此她迷路了。
   句中的 and 当"所以"讲,表示结果。lose one's way,迷路。
- 3. ask (sb.) the way, (向某人)问路。
- 4. say to oneself, 心中暗想。

注意:talk to oneself 意为"自言自语地说"。

5. Can you tell me the way to King Street, please? 您能告诉我到国王街怎么走吗?

tell sb. the way (to),告诉某人(去……的)路。

6. cut himself = cut his face.

以整体代替部分是英语中的一种修辞格,叫提喻(merism/merizm/)。

## 圖 语法 Grammar in use

### 1. 副词

副词(adverb)这个词的本意是补充动词的意义。这就是许多副词的作用。它们可以通过修饰动词告诉我们有关句中某个动作的情况,也就是告诉我们某事是如何、何时、何地等发生或进行的。

副词可以是单个的词(如 slowly)或词组(如 very well)。单一副词既有以-ly 结尾的也有不以-ly 结尾的(如 quickly, fast)。

形容词向副词的转换一般遵循 3 个规则:

(1) 在形容词后面直接加-ly, 如:

quick—quickly
hurried—hurriedly
pleasant — pleasantly
warm—warmly

(2) 以-y 结尾的形容词,则把-y 改成-i,再加-ly,如:

thirsty—thirstily
happy—happily

(3) 形容词与副词形式相同:

late—late
fast—fast
hard—hard
well—well

2. 部分不规则动词的过去式形式

go—went
see—saw
understand—understood
take—took
read—read /red/
drink—drank
run—ran
know—knew
say—said
put—put
cut—cut
eat—ate
meet—met
come—came

lose—lost

tell—told

speak—spoke

find—found

give—gave

swim—swam

have—had

### 词汇学习 Word study

#### 1. lose v.

#### (1) 迷失;(使)迷路:

She did not know London very well, and she lost her way.

她对伦敦不很熟悉,因此迷了路。

It's very easy to lose your way in a strange city.

在一个陌生的城市里,你很容易迷路。

### (2) 失去;丧失:

He lost his sight in a car accident.

他在一起汽车交通事故中失明了。

She has just lost her job because of carelessness.

她剛刚因疏忽大意而丢了工作。

### (3) 遗失;丢失:

I can't enter my house because I've lost my key on my way home.

我进不了自己的房子,因为在回家的路上我把钥匙丢了。 We lost her in the crowd.

我们在人群中找不见她了。

#### 2. understand v

#### (1) 理解;懂:

He doesn't understand English and you can try French. 他不懂英语,你可以试试法语。

I don't understand what you mean. 我不明白你的意思。

#### (2) 明了;了解;得知:

How the machine works is still not fully understood. 这台机器到底是如何运转的仍未被完全弄清楚。

Only today have I begun to understand the political situation in Northern Ireland.

直到今天我才了解了北爱尔兰的政治局势。

# Ø

## 练习答案 Key to written exercises

#### Lesson 74

A

- 1 He read the phrase slowly.
- 2 He worked lazily.
- 3 He cut himself badly.
- 4 He worked carefully.
- 5 The door opened suddenly.

В

(sample sentences)

- He does not know me very well.
- 2 She worked very hard.
- 3 She smiled pleasantly.
- 4 The bus went hurriedly.

156

- 5 He shaved slowly.
- 6 She drank a glass of water thirstily.
- 7 He greeted me warmly.
- 8 We enjoyed ourselves very much.

### Lessons 75~76

## ☐ 课文详注 Further notes on the text

- 1. Do you have any shoes like these? 像这样的鞋你们有吗? 这个句子里的 like these 是介词短语作定语, 修饰 shoes, 意思是"像这样的鞋子"。
- 2. What size? 什么尺码的?

这是一个省略句,后面省略了 do you want。下文中的 What colour? 同样也是省略句。what size 通常用来询问服装、鞋子、手套等的尺寸,即什么号码:

What size do you wear? 你穿几码的?

3. They are very uncomfortable. 的确很不舒适。

这个句子中的 are 用斜体表示强调,应重读。这里的强调表明了售货员对女士所说的话的反感和愤怒。

## ■ 语法 Grammar in use

- 一般过去时与时间短语
- 一般过去时通常与表示确切的过去时间的短语连用。这些短语一般是 last + 表示时间的名词、一段时间 + ago 等。
- (1) last week/month/year/night(上星期/上个月/去年/昨夜):
  Did you watch the television last night?
  你昨晚看电视了吗?
- (2) two minutes/hours/days/weeks/months/years ago (两分钟/小时/天/周/月/年前):

She bought the shoes two months ago. 她两个月之前买的鞋。

(3) in + 过去某一年:

We first met him in 1980.

我们 1980 年初次见到他。

(4) yesterday (昨天), yesterday evening (昨天晚上), the week before last (前一个星期), the month before last (前一个月), the year before last (前年), the day before yesterday (前天), the night before last (前天夜里):

She dusted the cupboard the day before yesterday. 她前天清扫了橱柜。

## 🏳 词汇学习 Word study

- 1. wear v.
- (1) 穿着;戴着;佩带着;

But women always wear uncomfortable shoes! 可是女人们总是穿不舒适的鞋子!

Look at the beautiful silk scarf she's wearing! 瞧她围着的那条漂亮的丝绸围巾!

She never wears perfume.

她从不用香水。

(2) 面带;呈现;保持:

He's wearing a cheerful smile.

他面带着快活的微笑。

He wears his dignity even in great adversity.

他即使身处逆境也仍保持着自己的尊严。

- 2. uncomfortable adj.
- (1) 不舒服的:

She feels uncomfortable in tight boots.

她穿着紧的长统靴感到不舒服。

#### (2) 不安的;不自在的:

You'll have an uncomfortable feeling if you sit there alone.

如果你独自一人坐在那儿,你会有种不安的感觉。

He often feels uncomfortable with strangers.

与陌生人在一起他通常感到不自在。

#### (3) 令人不舒服的,不舒适的:

This pair of shoes look very uncomfortable.

这双鞋看上去很不舒适。

It's really an uncomfortable day!

这真是令人难受的一天!

## Ø

## 练习答案 Key to written exercises

#### Lesson 76

Α

- 1 She met her friends yesterday.
- 2 They drank some milk yesterday.
- 3 He swam in the river yesterday.
- 4 She took him to school yesterday.
- 5 He cut himself yesterday (morning).

В

- 1 When did you walk across the park?
  I walked across the park last week.
- When did you wash your hands?
  I washed my hands a minute ago.
- 3 When did you work in an office?
  I worked in an office the year before last.

160

- 4 When did you ask a question?
  I asked a question five minutes ago.
- 5 When did you type those letters?
  I typed those letters a month ago.
- 6 When did you watch television?
  I watched television every day this week.
- 7 When did you talk to the shop assistant?
  I talked to the shop assistant last month.
- 8 When did you thank your father?
  I thanked my father an hour ago.
- 9 When did you dust the cupboard?
  I dusted the cupboard three days ago.
- When did you paint that bookcase?I painted that bookcase the year before last.
- 11 When did you want a car like that one?
  I wanted a car like that one a year ago.
- 12 When did you greet her?
  I greeted her a minute ago.

### Lessons $77 \sim 78$

## ☐ 课文详注 Further notes on the text

- 1. I want to see the dentist, please. 我想见牙科医生。
  I want to see sb., please 这一句式是表示想见某人时常用的句式之一。
- have an appointment (with sb.), (与某人)有约会。
   I have an appointment with my dentist at 3 p. m.
   我已约定下午3点去看牙医。
- 3. Is it urgent? **急吗?**这里的 it 指"要见牙医"这件事。
- 4. Can you come at 10 a.m. on Monday, April 24th? 您在 4 月 24日星期一上午 10 点钟来可以吗?

Can you come at...? 这一句式通常用来约定见面时间。注意英语中的时间次序一般是由小到大,与汉语正好相反。又如: on July 2nd, 1988 (在 1988 年 7 月 2 日), at seven on June 3rd, 1989 (在 1989 年 6 月 3 日 7 点)。a. m. ( = ante meridiem)上午,有时写成 A. M. 或 AM;下午则是 p. m. ( = post meridiem), 有时写成 P. M. 或 PM。

5. I must see... 我必须见……

比 I want to see...语气上要更强些,表达说话人某种强烈的愿望或需求。

- 6. at the moment, 正在说话的这会儿,此时。
- 7. Can't you wait till this afternoon? 您就不能等到今天下午了吗?

这是情态助动词的否定疑问句形式,表示请求。

## 画 语法 Grammar in use

#### 否定疑问句

否定疑问句可以表示说话者惊异的情绪、责难的口吻或赞叹; 也可表示说话者的某种建议、邀请、请求或看法等。请看下列 疑问句的简略否定式:

(be:)Aren't you a student? 难道你不是学生吗? Isn't it hot here? 这里难道不热吗?

(can:)Can't you wait a moment? 你不能等一会儿吗?

(have:) Haven't I asked you? 难道我没问过你吗?

(do:)Don't you want to stay with us? 你难道不愿意与我们呆在一起吗?

(did:)Didn't you see him yesterday? 难道你昨天没看见他吗?

回答这种问题时用简略回答。如果答语是肯定的,就用 Yes;如果答语是否定的,就用 No。不过,这种答语的汉语译法有特殊之处。如:

{Don't you know English? 你不懂英语吧? Yes, I do. 不,我懂。

一般否定疑问句有完全式和简略式之分,它们的词序是不同的。

完全式:

Is she not a nurse?

她不是一位护士吗?

#### 简略式:

Isn't she a nurse? 她不是一位护士吗?

## رحرا

### 词汇学习 Word study

- 1. urgent adj.
- (1) 紧迫的;急迫的;

There's an urgent message for you.

这里有你的一个要紧的口信儿。

The children in that area are in urgent need of medical attention.

那个地区的孩子们急需得到医疗方面的关注。

(2) 催促的;坚持要求的:

The cries and shouts became louder and more urgent. 哭喊声越来越响,更加急迫。

2. appointment n.

约会;约定:

I have made an appointment with Doctor Smith on next Tuesday.

我与史密斯大夫约好了在下星期二见面。

When is your lunch appointment?

你与别人共进午餐的约会定在什么时候?

Once you've made an appointment, you should try to keep it.

一旦你定好约会的事情,那么你应努力守约。



## 练习答案 Key to written exercises

#### Lesson 78

Α

- 1 She buys a new car every year. She bought a new car last year.
- 2 She airs the room every day. She aired it this morning.
- 3 He often loses his pen. He lost his pen this morning.
- 4 She always listens to the news. She *listened* to the news yesterday.
- 5 She empties this basket every day. She emptied it yesterday.

В

- 1 I painted the room in 1996.
- 2 She met him on 5th November.
- 3 They arrived a quarter to eleven.
- 4 He lost his pen on Saturday.

### Lessons 79~80

## ☐ 课文详注 Further notes on the text

1. And 1'm not going to get any! 不过,我不打算去买!

这里 get 表示"买",与 buy 同义:

I'll get a new bike for you.

我将给你买辆新自行车来。

2. groceries, 食品杂货。

## 画 语法 Grammar in use

#### must 与 need

(1) must 表示"必须"、"应当":

I must go to the grocer's.

我得去趟杂货店。

You mustn't make a noise!

你不该弄出噪音来!

Must I call the doctor?

我必须请大夫吗?

(2) nced 表示"需要"、"必须"。作助动词时多用于疑问句和否定句,如:

Need I make an appointment?

我需要约一下时间吗?

You need not hurry.

你不必太匆忙。

need 也可作实义动词,这时就要有人称,数及时态上的变化, 疑问句中也需用助动词 do。如:

We need a lot of things this week.

我们这周需要许多东西。

He needs some money.

他需要一些钱。

Do you need any sugar?

你需要一些糖吗?

What do they need this week?

他们这周需要什么东西?

### 词汇学习 Word study

#### 1. hope

(1) v. 希望;盼望;期待;

I hope that you'll have a lovely vacation.

我希望你能有一个愉快的假期。

Mark's hoping to study Law at Harvard.

马克盼望着进入哈佛大学学习法律。

I hope that you've got some money.

我希望你有了些钱。

(2) n. 希望,期望;指望:

We are full of hope for the future.

我们对未来充满信心。

(3) n. 期望着的事;被寄予希望的人:

His hope is that his son will get married and settle down soon.

他所希望的是他儿子能早点结婚,安顿下来。

He is a young man of genius, the hope of Russian poetry. 他是一位年轻的天才,是俄罗斯诗歌的希望所在。

#### 2. need

(1) v. 需要:

We need some honey.

我们需要些蜂蜜。

Do you need any help?

你需要帮忙吗?

Does he need to know?

他需要知道吗?

#### (2) n. 需要(物);必要:

There is no need of worrying.

不必担心。

There's a growing need of new housing in many cities.

许多城市正面临着对新建房屋的不断增长的需求。

We don't have any urgent need for money.

我们并不急需钱。

## Ø

### 练习答案 Key to written exercises

#### Lesson 80

Α

- 1 I haven't got much butter.
- 2 You haven't got many envelopes.
- 3 We haven't got much milk.
- 4 She hasn't got many biscuits.
- 5 They haven't got much stationery.

В

- 1 They need a lot of bread. They haven't got much.
  They must go to the baker's to get some bread.
- 2 She needs a lot of eggs. She hasn't got many.
  She must go to the grocer's to get some eggs.

- 3 They need a lot of magazines. They haven't got many.

  They must go to the newsagent's to get some magazines.
- 4 I need a lot of beef. I haven't got much.I must go to the butcher's to get some beef.
- 5 She needs a lot of butter. She hasn't got much. She must go to the grocer's to get some hutter.
- 6 They need a lot of bananas. They haven't got many.

  They must go to the greengrocer's to get some bananas.
- 7 He needs a lot of medicine. He hasn't got much. He must go to the chemist's to get some medicine.

### Lessons 81~82

## 🛄 课文详注 Further notes on the text

1. No, thanks, Tom. 不,谢谢,汤姆。

在别人请你吃东西时,如果你吃,就说 Ok, thanks/Oh, thank you。如果你不吃,则说 No, thanks。

2. Ob! 噢!

是感叹词,在这里表示惊讶。

3. Well, you're going to have roast beef and potatoes again tonight! 唉,今晚你们又要吃烤牛肉和土豆了!

是陈述句形式的感叹句。这里的 well 叮理解为感叹词,表示惊讶。

## 圖 语法 Grammar in use

### 完全动词 have(3)

have 可以代替常用动词,表示 eat, enjoy, experience, drink, take 等意义。这时的 have 是行为动词,所以与动作有关,而不像 have 表示"具有"时(请参见 Lessons 59~60 语法部分)那样表示状态(如 l have (got) a car)。因此,它可以用于各种时态。如:

Have a cigarette!

抽根烟吧!

I'm having a drink.

我在喝酒。

We had lunch together today.

我们今天一起吃了午饭。

当 have 不表示"有"而表示其他意思时,其用法和英语中的其 170 他动词相同,意即:在疑问和否定结构中,have 的一般现在时和一般过去时形式必须用 do, does 和 did:

Do you have milk in your tea? 你喝茶加牛奶吗? I don't have milk in my tea. 我喝茶不加牛奶。

| Did you have a nice holiday? | 你的假日过得愉快吗? | I didn't have a nice holiday. | 我的假日过得不愉快。

{Does he have lessons on Friday? 他周五上课吗? | He doesn't have lessons on Friday.

「他周五不上课。

# ② 词汇学习 Word study

- 1. nearly v.
- (1) 几乎; 差不多; 差点儿:

The dinner is nearly ready. 饭马上就好。 I nearly missed the train. 我险些赶不上火车。

(2) 极;密切地:

He resembles a film star nearly. 他酷似一位电影明星。 The matter concerns us nearly. 这事与我们有切身关系。

2. ready  $ad_1$ .

#### (1) 准备就绪的:

Dinner will be ready in 20 minutes.

20 分钟后就可以开饭了。

Are you ready to leave?

你是不是准备好这就可以动身了?

#### (2) 预先准备好的;立即可得到的;

The apples are ripe and ready to eat.

苹果完全熟了,随时可以享用。

We must get the house ready for our guests.

我们必须把房子收拾停当,以期我们的客人随时入住。

#### (3) 快的,立即的:

He gave a ready consent.

他立即爽快地表示同意。

This new system gives users readier access to the data. 这个新系统可以使用户们更快捷地进入数据库。

## 多 练习答案 Ke

练习答案 Key to written exercises

#### Lesson 82

Α

- 1 They ate a meal at a restaurant.
- 2 We went for a holiday last month.
- 3 Eat a biscuit.
- 4 You enjoyed yourself.
- 5 They are eating their lunch.
- 6 I drank a glass of milk.

В

1 They are going to have breakfast.

172

- 2 They are having lunch.
- 3 He must have tea.
- 4 They had dinner.
- 5 They must have a meal.
- 6 He is going to have a swim.
- 7 He is having a bath.
- 8 He had a haircut.
- 9 They are having a lesson.
- 10 They had a party.
- 11 They must have a holiday.
- 12 They are going to have a good time.

### Lessons 83~84

#### 课文详注 Further notes on the text

1. Come in. 进来吧。

Have a cup of tea then. 那么喝杯咖啡吧。

Let's go into the living-room, Carol. 我们到客厅里去吧,卡罗尔。

这 3 句都是祈使句。表示请求或命令的句子叫祈使句。祈使句中主语 you 常不出现,谓语动词用原形,句末用感叹号或句号。读时用降调。

2. I've just had a cup. 我刚喝了一杯。

句中 cup 后省略了 of coffec。

3. We're going to leave tomorrow. 明天我们就要走了。

这里的 are going to 表示"打算"、"准备"。请参见 Lessons 37~38 语法部分。

# i 语法 Grammar in use

#### 现在完成时

- (1) 在英语中,现在完成时主要用于以下两种情况;或者表示在过去不确定的时间里发生的并与现在有着某种联系的动作;或者表示开始于过去并持续到现在的动作。本课中萨姆所面临的是第1种情况,正是因为他吃了饭,喝过了咖啡,也休过假,因此他谢绝了汤姆的邀请,并表示今年已无可能再次休假。
- (2) 现在完成时在汉语中常用"了"、"过"或"已经"来表示。
- (3) 现在完成时由 have/has + 过去分词构成,单数第 3 人称用 has,其他人称皆用 have。规则动词的过去分词与过去式相同,而不规则动词的过去分词则无统一的规律可言,需特别加

以记忆。

(4) 一般现在完成时通常与表示不确定的时间副词或短语连用, 如 just, already, before, never, ever, twice, three times 等。

## √プ 词汇学习 Word study

- 1. leave v.
- (1) 离开,出发:

The train is going to leave in 5 minutes.

火车将于5分钟后开出。

I'm going to leave Italy.

我准备离开意大利。

#### (2) 舍弃;脱离;

John's wife left him for another man.

约翰的妻子舍他而去,投入另一个男子的怀抱。

Alexander is leaving the company after 30 years' service. 亚历山大将在为公司服务了30年之后离开公司。

#### (3) 留给,遗留;委托:

The famous actress left all her money to charity.

这位著名的女演员将她所有的钱都遗留给了慈善机构。

'Leave it to me,' he said.

"这事交给我来办吧,"他说道。

#### 2. pack v.

#### (1) 打包,装箱;

We are leaving tomorrow and I haven't even started packing yet.

我们明天就要走了,而我甚至还没开始将行李打包呢。

Don't forget to pack the mirror!

别忘了把镜子装起来!

#### (2) 挤满,塞满:

The movie fans packed the hall.

大厅里挤满了影迷。

The bus was packed with people.

公共汽车里挤满了人。

# 🖊 练习答案 Key to written exercises

#### Lesson 84

Α

- 1 I've already had some.
- 2 I've already had one.
- 3 I've already had one.
- 4 I've already had some.
- 5 I've already had one.
- 6 I've already had one.
- 7 I've already had some.

В

- He hasn't had any beans.
   He's just had some peas.
- 2 They haven't had any tea.
  They've just had some coffee.
- 3 I haven't had any apples.
  I've just had some peaches.
- 4 I haven't had any cabbage.
  I've just had some lettuce.
- 5 She hasn't had any beer.
  She's just had some wine.

- 6 He hasn't had any lamb. He's just had some beef.
- 7 They haven't had any tea.
  They've just had some milk.
- 8 She hasn't had any meat.
  She's just had some vegetables.
- 9 I haven't had any chicken. I've just had some steak.
- 10 They haven't had any bananas.
  They've just had some oranges.

### Lessons 85~86

### 课文详注 Further notes on the text

- 1. I've never been there. 我从未去过。
  never 表示"从无"、"从未",在这里有强调之意。
- 2. Have you ever been there, Ken? 背,你去过吗? ever 常用于否定句、疑问句以及表示条件的从句中表示"以往任何时候"、"曾经"、"在任何时候"、"从来"这类意思。用在此句中也有强调之意。

### ■ 语法 Grammar in use

#### have been 与 have gone

have been to a place 表示曾经去过某地,但现在不在那个地方了; have gone to a place 表示已经去某地了,现在在那个地方或正在去的路上。如:

George has been to Paris.

乔治去过巴黎。(他现在不在巴黎。)

George has gone to Paris.

<sup>【</sup>乔治去巴黎了。(他在巴黎或去巴黎的路上。)

Have you ever been to America?

你去过美国吗?(对方不在美国境内。)

 $\langle$  Has he gone to Washington D.C.?

他去华盛顿了吗?(被提到的人有可能现在美国境内或在赴美途中。)

## رشركا

### 词汇学习 Word study

beautiful adj.

(1) 美丽的, 使生美感的:

She was even more beautiful than I had expected.

她甚至比我预期的还要美。

She's a girl with a beautiful voice.

她是一位嗓音美妙动听的姑娘。

(2) 出色的,完美的;令人愉悦的:

Her French is as beautiful as her English.

她的法文说得和英文一样漂亮。

He did a beautiful job of painting the desk.

他油漆了书桌,活干得很漂亮。

Beautiful weather, isn't it?

天气晴朝宜人,对吗?

# Ø

### 练习答案 Key to written exercises

#### Lesson 86

Λ

- 1 She has just boiled an egg.
- 3 She has never been to China, but he was there in 1992.
- 4 He has already painted that bookcase.
- 7 He has just dusted the cupboard.

В

- I've already cleaned my shoes.
  - I cleaned my shoes last night.
- 2 I've already opened the window.

I opened the window an hour ago.

- 3 I've already sharpened my pencil.
  I sharpened my pencil a minute ago.
- 4 I've already turned on the television.I turned on the television ten minutes ago.
- 5 I've already boiled the milk.
  I boiled the milk yesterday morning.
- 6 I've already emptied the basket.
  I emptied the basket yesterday.
- 7 I've already asked a question.
  I asked the question two minutes ago.
- 8 I've already typed that letter.
  I typed that letter this morning.
- 9 I've already washed my hands.
  I washed my hands five minutes ago.
- 10 I've already walked across the park.
  I walked across the park an hour ago.
- 11 I've already painted that bookcase.
  I painted that bookcase a year ago.
- 12 I've already dusted the cupboard.I dusted the cupboard this afternoon.

### Lessons 87~88

### 🔲 课文详注 Further notes on the text

- 1. When did you bring it to us? 您什么时候送来的?
  bring 表示"送来"、"带来"和"拿来"的意思,在方位上多指朝说话人而来。
- they're still working on it. ……他们还在修呢。
   work on 表示"从事"、"干"(某事)。still 是"仍然"、"还在"的意思,此处在句中对 working on it 起了强调的作用。
- 3. have a look at it, 看一下。
  这里的 it 指 car,以避免重复。这里的 look 是名词, have a look at 与 look at 意思是一样的。
- 4. Isn't that your car? 这难道不是您的车吗?
  Didn't you have a crash? 难道您没有出车祸吗?
  在英文中可以用一般疑问句的否定形式来表示期待、请求或希望得到肯定的答复。

### ■ 语法 Grammar in use

#### 现在完成时的疑问式及否定式

现在完成时的构成是 have/has + 过去分词,因此其疑问式是将 have/has 提到主语之前,否定式则在 have/has 后加上 not 即可。如:

Have they lived here for 10 years?
他们在这儿住了 10 年了吗?
No, they haven't lived here for 10 years.
没有,他们在这儿没有住了 10 年。

{How long have they lived here? 他们在这儿住了多久? They've lived here only for 5 years. 他们在这儿仅住了5年。

Has she just aired the room or cleaned her shoes? 她刚给房间通风还是擦鞋?

She hasn't cleaned her shoes. She has just aired the room. 她没有擦鞋,她刚给房间通了风。

What have they just done? 他们刚干了什么事情? They have just made their beds. 他们刚铺好床。

{Hasn't he just been to the cinema? 他不是刚去看电影了吗? Yes, he has. 对。

Has she left the office? 她离开办公室了吗? No, she hasn't left the office yet. 没有,她还没有离开办公室。

# √→ 词汇学习 Word study

- 1. repair v.
- (1) 修理;修复;修补;

I'll have to get the bicycle repaired.

我得请人把自行车修理一下。

She looked into the mirror and began to repair her face. 她向镜中望去,开始往脸上重敷脂粉。

#### (2) 弥补;修复;赔偿;

How can I repair the mistake I have made?

我如何才能弥补我所犯的错误呢?

It will take a while to repair the confidence of the general public.

要恢复公众的信心尚需要一些时间。

#### 2. try v.

#### (1) 试图;设法,努力;

They tried hard to repair the damaged car.

他们竭尽全力修理那辆被损坏了的汽车。

He is trying to move the book shelf.

他正试图搬动那个书架。

#### (2) 尝试,试用;试验:

She's trying her new car.

她正在试她的新车。

I'll try that Italian restaurant next time.

下次我要到那家意大利餐馆去尝尝他们的菜。

# Ø

### 练习答案 Key to written exercises

#### Lesson 88

Λ

- Did he find his pen a minute ago?He didn't find his pen a minute ago.
- 2 Did he get a new television last week? He didn't get a new television last week.
- 3 Did you hear the news on the radio?
  We didn't hear the news on the radio.
- 4 Did they leave this morning?
  They didn't leave this morning.

- 5 Did he lose his umbrella yesterday?
  He didn't lose his umbrella yesterday.
- 6 Did you sweep the floor this morning? I didn't sweep the floor this morning.

В

- 1 Has he met Mrs. Jones yet?Yes, he has already met Mrs. Jones.When did he meet Mrs. Jones?He met her two weeks ago.
- 2 Has the boss left yet? Yes, the boss has already left. When did the boss leave? He left ten minutes ago.
- 3 Has he had breakfast yet?
  Yes, he has already had breakfast.
  When did he have breakfast?
  He had breakfast at half past seven.
- 4 Has she found her pen yet?Yes, she has already found her pen.When did she find her pen?She found her pen an hour ago.
- 5 Has he got a television yet?
  Yes, he has already got a television.
  When did he get a television?
  He got a television two weeks ago.
- 6 Has she heard the news yet?
  Yes, she has already heard the news.
  When did she hear the news?

She heard the news yesterday.

- 7 Has she made the bed yet?Yes, she has already made the bed.When did she make the bed?She made the bed this morning.
- 8 Has he sent the letter yet?Yes, he has already sent the letter.When did he send the letter?He sent the letter the day before yesterday.
- 9 Has she swept the floor yet?Yes, she has already swept the floor.When did she sweep the floor?She swept the floor yesterday morning.
- 10 Has she told him the truth yet?
  Yes, she has already told him the truth.
  When did she tell him the truth?
  She told him the truth last night.

### Lessons 89~90

### ☐ 课文详注 Further notes on the text

1. I believe that this house is for sale. 我想这房子是要出售的吧! believe 是"相信"、"认为"的意思,后可跟某人或名词性从句。如:

I believe you.

我相信你(说的话)。

I believe that he has already gone to London.

我认为他已经去伦敦了。

for sale 意为"供出售"、"待售"。

- 2. How long have you lived here? 您在这里住了多长时间? how long 常用于询问时间的长短与物体的长度。
- 3. since 1976, 从 1976 年起。 这是介词短语, since 在这里是介词。用这个介词短语作时间 状语的句子中,谓语要用完成时。(请参见本课语法部分。)
- 4. How much does this house cost? 这座房子卖多少钱?
  how much 常用于询问东西的价格。cost 是指得到一件东西所花费的钱,其真正的价值可能低于或高于所要的价。这种价格主要是指商店内的标价或货主索要的价格。相比之下,worth (prep.)主要是指某物的本身价值。
- 5. ...I can't decide yet. ·····我还不能决定。 句中的 yet 常见于否定句,表示"迄今仍未"的意思。

### ■ 语法 Grammar in use

#### for 与 since

现在完成时还可以描述发生在过去且一直延续到现在的动作, 186 这种动作甚至有可能延续下去。在这种情况下,它--般与for+一段时间、since+某个时间点连用。如:

How long has Ian lived in the house?
伊恩在这幢房子里住多久了?
He's lived here for twenty years.
他在这里住了 20 年了。
Since when has he been there?
他是从何时起就在那儿的?
Since 1976.

请注意:for + 一段时间表示某个动作持续多长时间;since + 某个时间点表示某个动作是何时开始的。

### 词汇学习 Word study

- 1. retire v.
- (1) 退休;离职:

He retired at the age of 60.

他60岁时退休了。

He's going to retire soon from the sea.

不久他将退休,结束其航海生涯。

(2) 退出;退隐;

He often retires to his country house at weekends.

他周末通常到他那个乡间别墅生活。

The ladies retired, and the gentlemen went on drinking and chatting.

女士们离席退出,先生们则继续喝酒聊天。

- 2. worth prep.
- (1) 相当于……价值,值……钱;

The new house would be worth 50,000 pounds. 这座新房子会值 50,000 英镑;
How much is the necklace worth?
这条项链值多少钱?

#### (2) 具有……价值;值得;

That city is worth visiting.
那座城市值得一游。
Is the film worth seeing?
这部电影值得一看吗?

# 赵 练习答案 Key to written exercises

#### Lesson 90

Α

- Did the sun set at twenty past seven?The sun didn't set at twenty past seven.
- 2 Did he eat his lunch at one o'clock? He didn't eat his lunch at one o'clock.
- 3 Did they do their homework last night? They didn't do their homework last night.
- 4 Did he come by car this morning? He didn't come by car this morning.
- 5 Did the sun rise at half past five?
  The sun didn't rise at half past five.
- 6 Did you swim across the river yesterday?
  We didn't swim across the river yesterday.

B
1 Yes, I did my homework last night.
188

- He hasn't done his homework yet.
- Yes, Mrs. Jones went to the butcher's this morning. Mrs. Williams hasn't been to the butcher's yet.
- 3 Yes, I spoke to him yesterday.
  She hasn't spoken to him yet.
- 4 Yes, George swam across the river an hour ago. Sam hasn't swum across it yet.
- 5 Yes, I saw that film yesterday.
  Sam and Penny haven't seen that film yet.
- 6 Yes, Tim took off his shoes a minute ago. Frank hasn't taken off his shoes yet.

### Lessons 91~92

### ☐ 课文详注 Further notes on the text

- 1. We'll all miss him. 我们大家都会想念他的。 all,大家,全部,指3个或3个以上的人或物;指两个用 both。 这里的 all 作 we 的同位语。
- 2.... but his wife did. ……可是他妻子离开。 句中 did 代替上文中的 wanted to leave。

### ■ 语法 Grammar in use

- 一般将来时
- (1)一般将来时表示将来某一时刻的动作、状态以及打算。该时态一般与表示将来意义的时间状语连用,如 tomorrow(明天), this month(本月), the day after tomorrow(后天), next week (下周), in two days' time(两天之后), from now on(从现在起), in the future(将来)等。
- (2) 一般将来时的形式为 will/shall + 动词原形。 will 可用于所有人称,但 shall 仅表示单纯将来时用于第一人 称 I 和 we,作为 will 的一种替代形式。

否定缩写:shan't=shall not, won't=will not:

I shan't leave tonight. I'll leave tomorrow.

今天夜里我不走。我将于明天离开。

They won't go to London this weekend.

这个周末他们不去伦敦。

此外,will 除了表示纯粹的将来时间外,还表示说话人的意图和意愿,而 shall 除了表示将来时间外同时还表示说话人的责任或决心。

(3)除了 will/shall 外,还可以用其他方法表示将来。在口语中, be going to 比 will/shall 更为普通,用来表示说话人的意图或打算。如:

She is going to travel by air.

她打算乘飞机旅行。

也可用来表示有迹象某事即将发生。如:

It's going to rain.

将要下雨了。

(4)可与将来时连用的时间短语有:

今天:

this morning/afternoon/evening 今天上午/下午/晚上tonight 今夜

明天:

tomorrow morning/afternoon/evening 明天上午/下午/

晚上

后天:

the day after tomorrow 后天 the night after next 后天夜里

其他:

in the morning 在上午 in the afternoon 在下午 in the evening 在晚上

# √ 词汇学习 Word study

- 1. miss v.
- (1) 想念, 惦念:

We'll miss you. 我们会想念你的。 His mother misses him very much. 他母亲很惦念他。

#### (2) 错过;未做到:

He overslept and missed his train.

他睡过了头,错过了他那班火车。

I missed an opportunity of realizing my dream.

我错过了一个可能实现自己梦想的机会。

#### 2. still adv.

#### (1) 还是,仍然:

I still don't understand what he meant.

我还是不明白他是什么意思。

She was still beautiful at the age of 46.

她 46 岁时依然美丽。

#### (2) 还要,甚至更:

It was hot yesterday, but it's still hotter today.

昨天很热,然而今天甚至还要热些。

She looked very ill last week and this week looks still worse.

上星期她看上去病得很厉害,而这个星期看来更不行了。

#### (3) 静止地;安静地;

He is sitting still.

他一动不动地坐着。

The patient is lying still.

病人安静地躺着。



### 练习答案 Key to written exercises

#### Lesson 92

Λ

- 1 He'll arrive tomorrow morning.
- 2 She'll come this evening.
- 3 It'll snow tonight.
- 4 He'll not believe me.

В

- 1 Yes, and it will snow tomorrow, too.
- 2 Yes, and he will get up late tomorrow, too.
- 3 Yes, and he will arrive late tomorrow, too.
- 4 Yes, and he will finish work late tomorrow, too.
- 5 Yes, and she will drive to London tomorrow, too.
- 6 Yes, and she will telephone him tomorrow, too.
- 7 Yes, and he will have a shave tomorrow, too.
- 8 Yes, and she will sweep the floor tomorrow, too.

### Lessons $93 \sim 94$

## 课文详注 Further notes on the text

- 1. next-door, 隔壁的。
- 2. the month after next, 再下个月。

after next 表示"下下个",如:

the week after next 下下个星期

#### 语法 Grammar in use

#### 可与一般将来时连用的时间短语

(1) this week(这周), next week(下周), the week after next(下下 周), this month(这个月), next month(下个月), the month after next(下下个月), this year(今年), next year(明年), the year after next(后年)。

注:一般过去时中通常会用 last 一词,而不是 next。

(2) in a day's time (一天以后), in a year's time (一年以后), in two weeks' time (两周后), in three months' time (3 个月后) 等等。

Where will he be the month after next?

下下个月他将在哪儿? He'll be in Tokyo.

(When will he come back to London?

他将于何时回伦敦? He'll come back the week a fter next.

| 他将于下下周回来。

Will you go to Athens next week?

你下周去雅典吗?

No, I shan't go to Athens next week. I shall go to Beijing.

「不,我下周不去雅典 我将去北京」

Will Sam leave for Bombay next month?

萨姆下月将动身前往孟买吗?

 $\Big\{No$  , he won't leave for Bombay next month . He will  $\Big\}$  leave for Berlin .

(不,他下月不前往孟买。他将动身去柏林。

## / 词

### 词汇学习 Word study

#### 1. return v.

#### (1) 回,返回:

He's just returned from abroad.

他刚从国外回来。

He'll return to London the week after next.

下下个星期他将返回伦敦。

#### (2) 回复:

Spring will return soon.

很快就又是春天了。

He returned to his copy of the New York Times.

他又重读起施那份《纽约时报》来。

#### (3) 归还;退还:

I'm going to return these books to the library.

我要把这些书还给图书馆。

I lent him my records and he never returned them!

我把自己的唱片借给他,而他却从未归还!

#### 2. lucky adj.

#### (1) 有好运的,幸运的:

Nigel is a very lucky man.

奈杰尔是个很幸运的人。

She was lucky to get such a well-paid job.

她能得到这样一个报酬优厚的工作真幸运。

#### (2) 侥幸的,碰巧的:

He didn't really know the answer—it was just a lucky guess.

他并非真知道答案——那不过是个侥幸的猜测。

It's lucky he's here.

他碰巧在这儿。

## 练习答案 Key to written exercises

#### Lesson 94

Α

- 1 He will go to New York next week.
- 2 She will go to Sydney next month.
- 3 I will go to Paris the year after next.
- 4 We will go to Stockholm next year.
- 5 They will go to Geneva the week after next.

В

- 1 No, Helen won't return to Geneva next year. She'll return to Bombay.
- 2 No, I won't fly to London tomorrow. I'll fly to Geneva.
- 3 No, Tom and I won't go to Madrid next year. We'll go to London.

196

- 4 No, Tom won't arrive from Moscow next month. He'll arrive from Madrid.
- 5 No, Carol and Helen won't stay in New York next month. They'll stay in Moscow.

### Lessons $95 \sim 96$

## 课文详注 Further notes on the text

- 1. plenty of, 充足的,足够的。 后面可跟可数名词或不可数名词
- 2. ten minutes slow,慢10分钟; ten minutes fast,快10分钟。
- 3. When's the next train? 下一班车是什么时候? 这个句子是用来询问火车启程时间时常见的句型。

#### 语法 Grammar in use

#### had better 与 must

had better 表示"最好还是"、"最好",表达某种忠告或建议 must 则表示"必须"、"一定",语气比 had better 强烈 had better 表示现在时或将来时,而不是过去时。其否定形式 为 had better not 请比较下列句子:

(We must go back to the station.

我们必须回车站去。 We had better go back to the station.

【我们最好回车站去。

(She must hurry.

, 她得抓紧点儿。

She had better hurry.

(她最好抓紧点儿

# ② 词汇学习 Word study

- exact adj.
- (1) 精确的;确切的;恰好的;

What is the exact time?

确切时间是什么时候?

This vase is an exact replica.

这只花瓶是件很巧妙的复制品

It's the exact shape 1've been looking for.

这恰好是我一直以来要寻找的形状。

(2) 严格的;严厉的:

The workers must obey exact rules.

工人们必须遵守严格的规定。

- 2. catch v.
- (1) 赶上;及时赶到:

We must hurry if we want to catch the last train.

如果我们想赶上最后一班火车就必须快点。

Every morning she would catch the 7.30 train to town.

每天早上她都赶7点半的那班火车进城。

(2) 听清楚;理解:

I didn't catch what you said just now.

我没听清楚你刚才所说的话。

(3) 引起(注意等);吸引,迷住;

The bright colours on the wall caught our attention.

墙壁上鲜艳的颜色吸引了我们的注意力。

The beautiful view in front of me caught and held me.

我面前美丽的景色把我迷住了。



### 练习答案 Key to written exercises

#### Lesson 96

Λ

- I had better stay here.
- 2 We had better wait for him.
- 3 You had better call a doctor.
- 4 They had better go home.
- 5 She had better hurry.
- 6 You had better be careful.

В

- 1 I'll go to Sydney in a month's time.
- 2 The next train will leave for Geneva in an hour's time.
- 3 I'll fly to Beijing in two days' time.
- 4 Jean and I will go to London in an hour's time.

### Lessons 97~98

### 课文详注 Further notes on the text

1. I left a suitcase on the train to London the other day. 几天前我把一只手提箱忘在开往伦敦的火车上了。

句中 left 是 leave 的过去式。leave 在这里表示"遗忘"、"丢下", 通常可与表示地点的短语连用。又如:

I left my glasses in the library.

我把眼镜忘在图书馆里了。

the other day 表示"几天前"。the other + 表示时间的名词通常只与过去时态连用。类似的短语有: the other morning/afternoon/evening/night(几天前上午/下午/晚上/夜里), the other week/month/year(几周/月/年前)。

2. There's a label on the handle with my name and address on it. 箱把上有一标签,上面写着我的姓名和住址。 句中介词 with 在这里可理解为"有"的意思。

3. fifty pence, 50 便士。

pence 是 penny(便士)的复数形式,表示币值。

## ■ 语法 Grammar in use

#### 所有格形容词和所有格代词(2)

(请参见 Lessons 11~12 语法部分。)

所有格形容词和所有格代词都是用来表示所有关系的。所有格形容词是限定词,放在名词前与名词构成名词短语,在句中作定语用。所有格代词后面不能再加名词,在句中作主语、宾语、表语用。

请比较下列两个句子:

The bicycle belongs to me.(宾格代词) 这辆自行车属于我。 The bicycle is mine.(所有格) (这辆自行车是我的。

## √→ 词汇学习 Word study

- 1. belong v.
- (1)(在所有权方面)属于:

That pen belongs to him.
那枝笔是他的;
This house belongs to Mrs. White.
这所房子属于怀特太太。

(2) 是……的成员:

Do you belong to the golf club? 你是高尔夫球俱乐部的成员吗? Which party does he belong to? 他是哪个党的党员?

(3)(在关系等方面)属于:

The novel really belongs to the 19th century. 这部小说其实是属于 19 世纪的。
We belong to the same generation.
我们属于同代人。

- 2. describe v.
- (1) 描述;形容:

She described the woman to the police.
她向警方描述了那个女人的外貌。
He described the whole event in detail.
他详尽地描述了整个事件。

### (2) 把……说成;把……称为(as):

They describe him as ambitious.

他们把饱料为雄心勃勃的人

# Ø

### 练习答案 Key to written exercises

#### Lesson 98

Λ

- 1 They are his.
- 2 It is mine.
- 3 They are hers.
- 4 They are ours.
- 5 The pens are theirs.
- It is yours.

В

- 1 Yes, it's hers. It belongs to Jane.
- 2 Yes, they're theirs. They belong to them.
- 3 Yes, it's mine. It belongs to me.
- 4 Yes, they're hers. They belong to her.
- 5 Yes, it's yours. It belongs to you.
- 6 Yes, it's his. It belongs to him.
- 7 Yes, they're theirs. They belong to them.
- 8 Yes, it's ours. It belongs to us.
- 9 Yes, they're theirs. They belong to them.

### Lessons $99 \sim 100$

## 课文详注 Further notes on the text

1. get up,站起来。

这一短语还可表示"起床"。

2. be afraid that, 想,恐怕; be sure that, 想,认为。 这两个结构后面通常接从句,在口语中有时 that 可省略。

### 🗐 语法 Grammar in use

1. 宾语从句(1)

宾语从句在句中作宾语,一般用 that 引导,但在口语中经常省略掉 that。

可用在 say, think, believe, hope, know, understand, suppose 等动词之后:

She says that she is cold.

她说她冷。

He thinks that he needs an X-ray o

他认为他需要拍个X片。

I know that I can repair this car.

我知道我能修理这部车。

They believe that they will have more money.

他们认为他们会有更多的钱。

可用在某些描写感情的形容词之后,如 afraid, sure, sorry, glad 等:

I am sure that you need an X-ray.

我觉得你需要拍个 X 片。

I am sorry that you are ill.

204

听到你生病了我很难过。

#### 2. 间接引述时的时态

如果间接引语中的引述动词是现在时,那么其后的时态通常与原来口头陈述句的时态相同。转述刚刚说完的话时通常皆如此。

## 🎦 词汇学习 Word study

- 1. slip v.
- (1) 滑倒:

She slipped and fell down on the wet stones. 她脚下滑了一下,跌倒在潮湿的石头上。

(2) 滑落;脱落:

The soap slipped out of her hand. 肥皂从她的手中滑落。

(3) 下滑;下跌:

Profits continue to slip this year. 利润今年呈持续下跌趋势。

(4) 遗忘;忽略;

Our wedding anniversary completely slipped my mind. 我把我们的结婚纪念日忘得一于二净。

- 2. hurt v.
- (1) 弄痛;使受伤:

Have you hurt yourself? 你伤着自己了吗? He fell off the bicycle and hurt his leg. 他从自行车上摔下来,摔伤了一条腿。

(2) 危害;损害:

That case has hurt his reputation.

那个案件损害了他的声誉。
I don't mean to hurt you.
我本无意伤害你的感情。

#### 3. help v.

#### (1) 帮助;援助;救助;

He devoted his life to helping the disabled. 他付出一生的心血去帮助那些残疾人。 Would you help me to lift this box? 你能否帮我抬一下这只箱子?

### (2) 对……有帮助;对……有好处:

My knowledge of French helped me a lot while I was travelling in France.

我在法国旅行时,我的法文知识帮了我大忙。

Humour can help in a tense situation.

幽默能够缓和紧张局面。

# 练习答案 Key to written exercises

#### Lesson 100

Α

- 1 She says that she has found her pen.
- 2 They say that they must remain here.
- 3 He says that he remembers you.
- 4 She says that she doesn't speak English.
- 5 They say that they are washing the dishes.

В

- 1 He says that he feels ill.
- 2 She says that she has got a headache.

206

- 3 He says that he wants a haircut.
- 4 They say that they are thirsty.
- 5 They say that they have a toothache.
- 6 She says that she needs a licence.
- 7 He says that he wants an X-ray.
- 8 She says that she is cold.
- 9 He says that he has got a cold.
- 10 He says that he has an earache.

# Lessons $101 \sim 102$

# 🛄 课文详注 Further notes on the text

1. speak up, 大声地说,清楚地说。

up 作副词用时可表示强度等的由弱到强、由低到高;

Can you get up to that note?

你能唱得到那么高的音吗?

2. He doesn't say very much, does he? 他没写许多,是吗?

附加疑问句中的前后两部分的谓语在时态、人称和数上都要一致。回答这种问句时要简略,要根据事实回答。如果答语本身是肯定的,就用 Yes;如果答语本身是否定的,就用 No。

# ■ 语法 Grammar in use

### 直接引语和间接引语

直接引语就是直接引用说话人原来所说的话;间接引语就是原话的转述。直接引语放在引号里,间接引语是把说话人的原话变成宾语从句。

间接引语中,宾语从句中的动词与主句中的主要动词在时态上必须保持一致。一般来说,主要动词用现在时,间接引语中可用现在时(包括一般现在时、现在进行时、现在完成时)和将来时。如:

She says she's got a headache.

她说她头痛。

He says he's staying at a Youth Hostel.

你说他正住在一家青年招待所。

He says he has sold his house.

他说他已卖掉了房子。

把直接陈述改为间接引语时,谓语动词形式的变化体现在人称上。如:

He says: 'I hope you are all well.'
他说: "我希望你们都身体健康。" ⇒
He says he hopes we / they are all well.
他说他希望我们/他们都身体健康。
The girl says: 'I have finished my homework.'
那个姑娘说: "我已完成了家庭作业。" ⇒
The girl says that she has finished her homework.
那个姑娘说她已完成了家庭作业。

# ☑ 词汇学习 Word study

- 1. write v.
- (1) 写,书写:

They are learning to read and write. 他们在学习读书写字。 She writes legibly. 她笔迹清楚。

(2) 写信:

I'll write to you soon. 我会尽快给你写信的。 Why didn't she write and tell him? 她为什么不写信告诉他?

(3) 写作;作曲;当作家:

He started to write for the stage.
他开始成为一名剧作家。
He soon finished writing a symphony.
他很快就谱写成一部交响曲。

#### 2. soon adv.

### (1) 不久:

It will soon be spring. 春天很快就要到了。 Soon she would have to resign.

她不久就得辞职了。

### (2) 早;快:

Why are you leaving so soon?
你为什么这么快就要走了?
He came sooner than we expected.
他来得比我们预料的快。

# 练习答案 Key to written exercises

#### Lesson 102

#### Α

- I She says she has shut the door.
- 2 He says he has put on his coat.
- 3 He says he has read this magazine.
- 4 They say they have spoken to the boss.
- 5 They say the sun has risen.

#### В

(sample sentences)

- 1 He says he has got a cold.
- He says he feels cold.
- 3 He says he will sell his house.
- 4 He says he needs an X-ray.
- 5 He says he must wait for a bus.

#### 210

- 6 He says he has got an earache.
- 7 He says he feels thirsty.
- 8 He says he needs a haircut.
- 9 He says he feels ill.

## Lessons 103~104

# 🛄 课文详注 Further notes on the text

1. the rest, 剩余部分。

这里指其余的题,注意 rest 与定冠词连用的用法。

2. at the top of, 在……顶端。

反义词为 at the bottom of (在……末端)。

3. next to, 邻近,贴近。

# 画 语法 Grammar in use

### too与 enough

- (1) enough 的用法
- A 在形容词之后使用:

He failed the exam because it wasn't easy enough.

他考虑不及格,因为题不够容易。(不说 enough easy)

B 在名词之前使用:

He didn't buy the car because he didn't have enough money.

他没买那部车,因为他没有足够的钱。

C 可以用在 enough...for sb./sth.和 enough...to do sth.结构之中:

She hasn't got enough money for a holiday.

她没有足够的钱去度假。

This dress isn't big enough for her.

这件衣服对她来说不够大。

She's not old enough to live alone.

她未到独自生活的年纪。

### (2) too 的用法

#### A too 表示"过于":

I can't go out. It's too hot.

我无法外出,太热了。

She couldn't answer the questions because they were too difficult for her.

她无法回答问题,因为对她来说太难了。

B 可以用在 too...for sb./sth.结构之中:

This skirt is too big for me.

这条裙子对她来说太大了。

It's too easy for me.

这对我来说太容易了。

C 可以用在 too...to do sth.结构之中:

The exam was too difficult for him to pass.

考试太难了,以至于他无法通过。

The box is too heavy for you to carry.

这个盒子太沉了,你没法扛起。

She is too young to live alone.

她年纪太小了,无法独自生活、

It's too far to walk home from here.

从这几步行回家太远了。

### 请比较:

The wall is too high for them to climb over.

这堵墙太高了,他们无法攀越过去。

The wall is low enough for them to climb over.

这堵墙矮到如此之程度,以至于他们可以攀越过去。

### 词汇学习 Word study

#### 1. fail v.

(1) 失败;及格:

Doctors failed to save the old man's life.

医生们未能挽救那位老人的生命。

He failed his French paper because it was too difficult.

他的法语考试没及格,因为试卷太难了。

(2)(身体等)衰退;变弱;凋谢;

My eyesight is failing.

我的视力在衰退。

The flowers failed for lack of sunshine.

花因缺少阳光而凋谢。

(3)(后接不定式)不,不能;忘记:

I fail to see why you find it so extraordinary.

我不明白为什么你们认为它如此与众不同。

He failed to persuade me.

他没能说服我。

#### 2. hate v.

(1) 讨厌;不喜欢;有反感:

He hates exams!

他讨厌考试!

I hate beef.

我不喜欢牛肉。

(2) 憎恨;憎恶:

He said that he hated hypocrisy.

他说他憎恶虚伪。

Tom really hates the murderer in that film.

汤姆十分仇视那部电影中的杀人凶手。



# 练习答案 Key to written exercises

#### Lesson 104

Α

- 1 I couldn't speak to the boss. He was too busy.
- 2 I couldn't go out. It was too cold for me to go out.
- 3 I could answer all the questions. They were very easy.
- 4 Is that suitcase light enough for you to carry?
- 5 Is your brother old *enough* to be a member of our association?
- 6 They couldn't see that film. They were too young.

В

- 1 Yes, he could. It was cheap enough for him to buy.
- 2 No, he couldn't. It was too expensive for him to buy.
- 3 Yes, they could. They were fresh enough for them to eat.
- 4 No, they couldn't. They were too stale for them to eat.
- 5 Yes, they could. It was loud enough for them to hear.
- 6 No, they couldn't. It was too low for them to hear.
- 7 Yes, he could. It was low enough for him to climb.
- 8 No, he couldn't. It was too high for him to climb.
- 9 Yes, she could. It was soft enough for her to eat.
- 10 No, she couldn't. It was too hard for her to eat.
- 11 Yes, she could. It was sweet enough for her to eat.
- 12 No, she couldn't. It was too sour for her to eat.

# Lessons $105 \sim 106$

# 课文详注 Further notes on the text

- How do you spell...? ……怎样拼写?
   这是询问某个单词或某人的姓名如何拼写时常用的句型。
- 2. You've typed it with only one 'L'. 但你只打了1个"L"。 句中 it 指 intelligent 一词。这里的 with 意即"用"。
- 3. And here's a little present for you. 这里有一件小礼物送你。 这是一个倒装句。由 here 引导、谓语为 be 的句子通常用倒装语序。这里 and 是表示承上启下,使上下文紧密联系,当"于是"、"因此"讲。

# 画 语法 Grammar in use

#### 动词不定式

在英语中,当一个动词被另一个动词紧跟时,它们之间必须加不定式符号(to)。不定式符号后面的动词只能是原形,而不能是过去式或分词形式。

(1) 不定式作动词的宾语(动词+to...);

He wants to buy a car.

**他想买辆车。** 

He hopes to pass the French exam.

他希望自己能通过法语考试。

I want to leave.

我想离开。

(2) 有许多动词可以带名词/代词宾语(通常是人称代词宾格),后面再跟不定式(动词+名词/宾格代词+to...):

I want you to carry it.

我想让你扛着它。

He wants them to listen to it.

他想让他们听那个。

Tell him to move it.

让他搬它。

### (3) 不定式的否定形式是在 to 之前加 not:

He decided not to buy the house.

他决定不买这幢房子。

He told me not to close the window.

他让我不要把窗户关了。

Tell him not to move it.

告诉他不要搬动它。

# ☐ 词汇学习 Word study

#### 1. correct v.

### (1) 改正;纠正:

Please correct me if I'm wrong.

如果我错了,请你纠正。

I spent the whole morning correcting exam papers.

我花了整个上午的时间批改试卷。

### (2) 校正;矫正:

This pair of glasses will correct your eyesight problem.

这副眼镜会有助于矫正你的视力问题。

Oh, let me correct my watch first.

噢,先让我把我的手表对好。

#### 2. break v.

### (1) 打破;使碎裂:

She told him not to break the vase.

她告诉他别把花瓶打碎了。

He broke a leg in the accident.

他在这起事故中摔断了一条腿。

#### (2) 损坏; 弄坏:

His little daughter has broken his favourite camera.

他的小女儿把他心爱的照相机弄坏了。

You shouldn't have bought such expensive toys for him because he will simply break them.

你不应该买这么昂贵的玩具给他,因为他会轻而易举地 把它们弄坏的。

### (3) 破坏;违反;

Any one who breaks the law should be punished.

任何触犯法律的人都应受到惩罚。

The student who broke the school regulations was severely criticized.

那位违反了校规的学生受到了严厉的批评。

# Ø

# 练习答案 Key to written exercises

#### Lesson 106

Α

- 1 I want you to spell it.
- 2 I want you to telephone him.
- 3 I want you to wear it.
- 4 I want you to ask her.
- 5 I want you to tell them.
- 6 I want you to help us.

- 1 What do you want me to do? I want you to carry it.
- 2 What do you want me to do? I want you to correct it.
- 3 What do you want me to do? I want you to listen to it.
- 4 What do you want me to do? I want you to describe it.
- 5 What do you want me to do? I want you to move it.
- 6 What do you want me to do? I want you to try it.
- 7 What do you want me to do? I want you to finish it.
- 8 What do you want me to do? I want you to keep it.

C

- 1 She is telling him not to hurt himself. She doesn't want him to hurt himself.
- 2 She is telling him not to slip. She doesn't want him to slip.
- 3 She is telling him not to fall. She doesn't want him to fall.
- 4 She is telling them not to miss it. She doesn't want them to miss it.
- 5 She is telling him not to break it. She doesn't want him to break it.
- 6 He is telling her not to drive it. He doesn't want her to drive it.

D

- 1 Because she doesn't want him to hurt himself.
- 2 Because she doesn't want him to slip.
- 3 Because she doesn't want him to fall.
- 4 Because she doesn't want them to miss it.
- 5 Because she doesn't want him to break it.
- 6 Because he doesn't want her to drive it.

# Lessons 107~108

# 🛄 课文详注 Further notes on the text

- 1. be in fashion, 时髦, 流行。
- 2. Would you like...? 你愿意……吗?

这个句型常用于表示委婉的请求或提议:

Would you like to go with us? 你乐意与我们一起去吗?

3. as well, 同时,也。

通常用于句末。如:

He knows Spanish as well.

他还懂西班牙语。

too 与 as well 一般不用于否定句,否定句中用 either。

4. Could you...? 您能……吗?

用于表示请求,比 Can you...? 更加婉转客气:

Could you tell me the way to the post office?

您能告诉我去邮局怎么走吗?

5. like that one, 像那件那样的。

是介词短语,作定语,修饰 dress。

# 🗐 语法 Grammar in use

形容词的比较级和最高级

(1)构成

A 大多数单音节形容词的比较级和最高级的构成是在其原级后 面加土-er 和-est:

small—smaller—smallest

new - newer - newest

220

B 许多单音节形容词只有一个元音字母,其末尾为一辅音字母。 在比较级和最高级形式中,这个辅音字母要双写;

C 许多单音节形容词以-e 结尾,如 nice。这些形容词只需在原级形式后加-r 和-st:

i) 有些形容词以-y 结尾,而在-y 前是一个辅音字母。这些形容 词一般有两个音节。变为比较级和最高级时,-y 要变成-i,末 尾再加-er 和-est;

E 但有少数形容词的比较级和最高级是不规则的,必须熟记,如:

- F 大多数较长的形容词(即有两个以上音节的词)可与 more 连 用构成其比较级形式,与 most 连用构成其最高级形式。
- (2)用法

比较级只用于两者之间,通常与 than 连用。形容词比较级之 所指如果很清楚,它也可独立存在:

This coat is longer.

这件外衣较长。

最高级用于3者或3者以上。形容词的最高级在使用时必须加定冠词,并常伴有一个表示范围的介词短语或从句:

That girl is the tallest student in our class.

那位姑娘是班上个子最高的学生。

# $\overline{C}$

### 词汇学习 Word study

#### 1. compare v.

比较, 对照:

The article compares the different features of imported cars on the market.

这篇文章比较了市场上进口汽车的不同特点。

Compared to our little garden, his garden seemed like a park.

与我们的花园相比,他的花园就像是一个公园。

#### 2. suit v.

### (1) 适合;适宜于:

Finding a place that suits us all is very difficult. 找到一个适合于我们所有人的地方是很困难的。

'One o' clock? That does not suit me.'

"1点钟?那个时间对我来说不合适。"

### (2) 相称,相当:

He would not be suited to the job.

他不适合干那份工作。

Blue suits her.

蓝色与她相配。

# Ø

# 练习答案 Key to written exercises

#### Lesson 108

A

- 1 It is cool today, but it was cooler yesterday.
- 2 It is wet today, but it was wetter yesterday.
- 3 He's late again today, but he was later yesterday.
- 4 This test is easy, but that one is easier.

5 This bookcase is large, but that one is larger.

В

I am older than you are.
 I am the oldest in the class.

2 I am taller than you are.
I am the tallest in the class.

3 I am lazier than you are.
I am the laziest in the class.

4 I am heavier than you are.
I am the heaviest in the class.

5 I am luckier than you are.
I am the luckiest in the class.

6 I am fatter than you are.
I am the fattest in the class.

7 I am thinner than you are.
I am the thinnest in the class.

8 I am bigger than you are.
I am the biggest in the class.

 $\mathbf{C}$ 

But that street is cleaner.
 It is the cleanest street I have ever seen.

But that man is older.
 He is the oldest man I have ever seen.

3 But that river is longer.
It is the longest river I have ever seen.

4 But that woman is shorter.
She is the shortest woman I have ever seen.

- 5 But that knife is blunter.
  It is the bluntest knife I have ever seen.
- 6 But that car is cheaper.
  It is the cheapest car I have ever seen.

# Lessons $109 \sim 110$

# ☐ 课文详注 Further notes on the text

1. Just a little, please. 请稍加一点儿。

a little (= some), 一些/一点,用于修饰不可数名词。又如:

a little money/water/coffee

-点儿钱/水/咖啡

a few (= some, several)则用于可数名词。

- 2. One and a half teaspoonfuls, please. 请放一勺儿半。 在英语中,比1大的东西,即使比2小,也需用复数表示。
- 3. May I...? 我可以……吗? 表示"请求"或"请求允许"。
- 4. It doesn't matter. 没关系。
   这是表示此意的几种常用说法之一。

#### 5. 省略

more than you have 中 have 后省略了 got。下文中的 less than you have 和 fewer than you have 同此。more than 表示"比……多";less than 表示"比……少";fewer than 表示"比……少"(用于可数名词)。

I've got the most 中 most 后省略了 chocolate。形容词的最高级之后的名词在意思清楚的时候可省略。下文中的 the least 同此。the fewest 后省略了 mistakes。

6. I've ever seen,我所见过的。

定语从句,分别修饰 the best, the worst。

# 语法 Grammar in use

#### 1. 不规则形容词的比较级和最高级

不规则形容词的比较级和最高级例举如下:

#### 2. 名词的数与修饰词

可数名词的多与少,用 many 与 few 来表达;不可数名词的多与 少,则用 much 与 little 来表达:

(I' ve got some biscuits.

You've got more biscuits than I have. 你的饼干比我的多。

I've got fewer than you have.

我们拥有的比你的少。

I've got very few.

我有为数很少的(几块)。

(I' ve got some chocolate.

我有些巧克力。

You've got more chocolate than I have.

你的巧克力比我的多。

I've got less than you have.

我所拥有的比你所拥有的少。

I've got very little.

**【我所有的为数很少。** 

# 🎦 词汇学习 Word study

#### 1. smoke v.

#### (1) 抽(纸烟、烟斗等):

He smokes cigars.

他抽雪茄。

Eat more and smoke less!

多吃点,少抽点!

#### (2) 冒烟;冒雾气;

She could see a chimney smoking in the nearby village.

她可以看到附近村子里的烟囱在冒烟。

Is the fireplace smoking?

壁炉在冒烟吗?

#### (3) 熏制(鱼肉等):

Do you know how to smoke hams?

你知道如何熏制火腿吗?

#### 2. instead adv.

### (1) 作为替代:

I'm tired and can't attend the meeting; you could go instead.

我累了,不能去开会了,你可以代替我去。

She did not want to go to the university. Instead, she decided to become a singer.

她不想上大学,而是决定成为一名歌手。

### (2) 代替,而不是(of):

She wanted to have milk instead of juice.

她想要牛奶,而不是果汁。

She prefers buying books instead of borrowing them from the library.

### 她宁可买书而不愿到图书馆去借。



### 练习答案 Key to written exercises

#### Lesson 110

#### Α

- 1 I haven't got any pens. I haven't got many either.
- 2 I've got some money. I've got less than you have.
- 3 I haven't got any money. I haven't got much either.
- 4 I've got some books. I've got fewer than you have.

#### В

- 1 I haven't got much jam. I've got very little.
- 2 I haven't got many potatoes. I've got very few.
- 3 I haven't got many oranges. I've got very few.
- 4 I haven't got many vegetables. I've got very few.
- 5 I haven't got much meat. I've got very little.
- 6 I haven't got much money. I've got very little.

#### C

- 1 I've got more soap than you have.
- 2 I've got more fruit than you have.
- 3 I've got more books than you have.
- 4 I've got more presents than you have.
- 5 I've got more eggs than you have.
- 6 I've got more stationery than you have.

#### []

I I've got less jam than you have. I've got the least.

#### 228

- 2 I've got fewer potatoes than you have. I've got the fewest.
- 3 I've got fewer vegetables than you have. I've got the fewest.
- 4 I've got fewer oranges than you have. I've got the fewest.
- 5 I've got less meat than you have. I've got the least.
- 6 I've got less money than you have. I've got the least.

### Lessons 111~112

# **二** 课文详注 Further notes on the text

1. buy on instalments,以分期付款的方式购买。

I have bought this house on instalments. 我用分期付款的方式买了这所房子。

2. ... and then fourteen pounds a month for three years. ..... 然后 每月 14 镑,3 年付清。

then 和 fourteen 之间省略了 pay。

# 圖 语法 Grammar in use

形容词的平级比较级:as...as

形容词的比较形式有 3 种:较高比较级(more expensive, the most expensive); 较低比较级(less expensive); the least expensive); 平级比较级(as expensive as)。

请看下面句中 as... as 的用法:

The green apple is as sweet as the red one.

这个绿苹果同那个红苹果一样甜。

The policeman is as tall as the policewoman.

这个男警察与那个女警察个子一样高。

The white knife is as sharp as the black one.

这把白色的小刀与那把黑色的小刀一样锋利。

I don't know as many people as you do.

我认识的人没有你认识的多。

Robert is not as old as he tooks.

罗伯特没有他看上去那么高。

The blue car is not as clean as the red car.

蓝车没有红车干净。

# ☑️ 词汇学习 Word study

#### 1. afford v.

(1) 买得起;付得起(钱);

She can't afford a new coat.

她买不起一件新大衣。

We are not rich enough to afford a car.

我们并不太富有,不能购置汽车。

(2) 担负得起(时间等):

I feel I can't afford any more time on this project.

我觉得我不能再在这个项目上花更多的时间。

We can't afford such enormous fees.

我们无法负担如此巨额的费用。

### 2. deposit

(1) n. 预付定金;押金;保证金:

He put down a deposit on the house yesterday.

昨天他付了房子的定金。

You'll have to pay a deposit of \$60 to reserve the room. 要预定这个房间,你需交付60美金的押金。

(2) v. 存放;存储:

We were advised to deposit our valuables in the bank safe. 别人建议我们将自己的贵重物品存放在银行的保险箱里。

(3) 付(保证金);预付(定金):

I deposited \$1,500 on a new car.

我付了1,500美金作为购新车的定金。

# 练习答案 Key to written exercises

#### Lesson 112

Α

- 1 This book is cheap, but that one is cheaper.
- 2 This book is expensive, but that one is more expensive.
- 3 This question is easy, but that one is easier.
- 4 This question is difficult, but that one is more difficult.

В

- 1 Is the policeman as tall as the policewoman?
  No, he isn't. The policeman isn't as tall as the policewoman.
- 2 Is the man as short as the woman?
  No, he isn't. The man isn't as short as the woman.
- Is the boy as old as the girl?No, he isn't. The boy isn't as old as the girl.
- 4 Is the red pencil as blunt as the green pencil?

  No, it isn't. The red pencil isn't as blunt as the green pencil.
- 5 Is the blue car as clean as the red car?
  No, it isn't. The blue car isn't as clean as the red car.
- 6 Is the woman as fat as the man?
  No, she isn't. The woman isn't as fat as the man.

С

- 1 No, it isn't. It is more expensive.
  It's the most expensive radio I've ever seen.
- 2 No, he isn't. He is more intelligent.

232

He's the most intelligent person I've ever met.

- 3 No, it isn't. It is more interesting.
  It's the most interesting book I've ever read.
- 4 No, it isn't. It is less difficult.

  It's the least difficult test I've ever done.

# Lessons 113~114

# 课文详注 Further notes on the text

1. I can't change a ten-pound note. 我找不开 10 英镑的钞票。

这里 change 是动词,意为"兑换"。 change 还可作名词,意为 "零钱",如课文中的 I've got no small change, I'm afraid。此 外,no + 名词表示所指的东西全然没有。以上这句话比! haven't got any small change 更强调没有任何一点儿零钱。

2. I've got none. 我没有。

这里指零钱(不可数名词)。none 也可与可数名词连用,如:

None of our passengers can change this note.

我们的乘客中没有一个能破开这张钞票的。

none 在句中通常单独使用,如:

There's no beer in the refrigerator.

冰箱里没有啤酒。 There's none.

(I bought no magazines.

〔我没买什么东西。

3. Except us. 我们俩除外。

意思是:除了我们,他们都是百万富翁。

#### 语法 Grammar in use

so 与 neither 引导的简短回答

以so 或 neither 开头的简短回答,必须用倒装形式,即:So/ 234

Neither + 助动词 + 主语。假如前一句是肯定的,后一句就用 so 开头;如前一句是否定的,后一句则用 neither/nor 开头。前后两句的时态要一致。

### (1) 以 so 开头的句子;

<sup>1</sup>我也一样。 { I want some coffee. ] 我想要些咖啡。 So do I. <sup>〔</sup>我也一样。 (I was at the party last night. 我昨晚参加聚会了。 So was I. (I can swim very well. 我游泳游得好。 So can I. <sup>【</sup>我也如此。 [I saw George last night. 我咋晚看见乔治了。 So did 1. <sup>し</sup>我也一样。  $\{I' \text{ ve got a cold }.$ 

(2) 以 neither 开头的句子:

```
(1) m not tired.
(I don't want any tea.
我不想要任何茶。
Neither do 1.
我也一样。
(I wasn't tired this morning.

↓我今天不累。

Neither was I.
I can't speak Chinese.
<sup>₹</sup>我不会讲汉语。
| Neither can 1.
I didn't buy a new car last year.
<sub>≺</sub>我去年没买新车,
 Neither did 1.
'我也如此。
 I haven't got a headache.
↓我没头疼。
 Neither have I.
:我也一样。
```

# 🌅 词汇学习 Word study

- 1. change v.
- (1) 兑换:

236

I want to change the pounds into dollars.

我想把这些英镑兑换成美元、

Could you change me a one-pound note, please? 能否请你换一镑的零钱给我?

#### (2) 改变;更改:

He changed his mind at last.

他最终改变了自己的主意。

This plan is to change the desert into farmland.

这个计划是要将沙漠变为农田。

### (3) 交换;改换:

Shall we change our seats?

我们调换一下座位好吗?

You've got to change your bus at the next stop.

你得在下一站换车。

### 2. except prep.

### 除……外;

Everyone except Jane went to the party.

除简之外的所有人都去参加那个派对了。

They' re open every day except Sunday.

除星期天之外,他们每天都开门。

I like him except when he's gloomy.

除了他满脸阴沉的时候之外,我挺喜欢他。

# Ø

# 练习答案 Key to written exercises

#### Lesson 114

Α

- 1 There are no books on that shelf.
- 2 I have got no money.

- 3 There is no coffee in this tin.
- 4 I saw no cars in the street.

#### В

- No, I haven't got any milk.
   I've got no milk. I've got none.
- 2 No, I haven't got any envelopes.
  I've got no envelopes. I've got none.
- 3 No, I haven't got any magazines.
  I've got no magazines. I've got none.
- 4 No, I haven't got any bread.
  I've got no bread. I've got none.

#### C

- 1 Neither am I. I'm not hungry, either.
- 2 Neither did 1. I didn't meet him, either.
- 3 Neither was I. I wasn't at church yesterday, either.
- 4 Neither do I. I don't like ice cream, either.
- 5 Neither can I. I can't swim, either.
- 6 Neither am I. I'm not a doctor, either.

#### Ð

- 1 So am I. I'm hungry, too.
- 2 So did I. I met him, too.
- 3 So was I. I was at church yesterday, too.
- 4 So do I. I like ice cream, too.
- 5 So can I. I can swim, too.
- 6 So am I. I'm a doctor, too.

### Lessons 115~116

# 🛄 课文详注 Further notes on the text

- 1. Everything's = Everything iso
- 2. Nothing at all. 什么也看不见。 是省略句,承上句省略了 [ see。
- 3. It's nice and warm out here. 这外面挺暖和。 句中 it 指天气。nice and 用于形容词或副词前加强语气, 意为 "很"、"十分"。一般表示褒义, 但有时也用于表示贬义。
- 4. There's none left. 一点都不剩了。

句中的 left 是 leave 的过去分词,表示"剩下的"、"没用完的"。 它通常位于不定代词之后,出现在 there is/are 结构中:

There is nothing left in the refrigerator. 冰箱中没剩下什么东西。

# 语法 Grammar in use

### 不定代词

(1)every(每一),no(无),any(若干)及 some(一些)可与 one,thing 构成复合代词,与 where 构成复合副词。不定代词可作主语、宾语和表语。

every	no	any	some
everyone	no one	anyone	someone
everybody	nebody	anybody	somebody
everything	nothing	anything	something
everywhere	nowhere	anywhere	somewhere

### 请看例句:

#### A 作主语:

这些代词作主语时都作单数看待,因此使用单数谓语动词。

Everyone is asleep.

大家都睡了。

Everything is untidy.

一切都乱糟糟的。

Nobody has told me about it.

没有人告诉过我有关这件事的情况。

#### B 作宾语:

I've got nothing to wear.

我没有穿的衣服了。

I've heard nothing.

我没听到什么动静。

I saw no one.

我谁也没有看到。

### C 作表语:

There's nothing on the shelf.

架子上什么也没有。

There's somebody in the garden.

花园里有个人。

That's nothing.

那没什么。

(2) 与 some 与 any 的用法一样, somebody/someone/something/somewhere 一般用于肯定句; anybody/anyone/anything/anywhere 用于疑问句与否定句; nothing/nobody/no one/nowhere 相当于 not anything/anybody/anyone/anywhere:

Someone is asking to see you.

有人要求见你。

There's something under that chair!

那个椅子下有个什么东西!

I don't know anyone here.

这儿我谁也不认识。

Is there anything on this shelf?

这个架子上有什么东西吗?

I went nowhere. ( = I didn't go anywhere.)

我哪儿也没去。

I saw no one . (  $= I \ didn't \ see \ anyone$  .)

我谁也没看到。



# 词汇学习 Word study

#### 1. invite v.

#### (1) 邀请:

We're inviting our colleagues to the party.

我们将邀请我们的同事参加这个聚会。

I hate people who invite themselves.

我讨厌不请自来的客人。

### (2) 请求;要求:

We invite readers' letters for this magazine.

本杂志欢迎读者来信。

The speaker paused, seeming to invite questions from the audience.

演讲者稍停了一下,似乎在期待听众们提出问题。

### 2. joke

## (1) v. 开玩笑:

She's only joking with you.

她只是在跟你开玩笑。

### (2) v. 取笑:

Aren't you joking me? 你不是在取笑我吧?

### (3) n. 玩笑;笑话:

The whole thing was a complete joke.

整件事完全是个笑话。

Don't get angry—it was only a joke! 别生气——那只是一个玩笑而已!

# 练习答案 Key to written exercises

#### Lesson 116

A

- 1 I did nothing.
- 2 I saw no one.
- 3 I went nowhere.
- 4 I met nobody.

В

- 1 No. I didn't hear anything. I heard nothing.
- 2 No, I didn't speak to anyone. I spoke to nobody.
- 3 No, I didn't go anywhere. I went nowhere.
- 4 No, I didn't buy anything. I bought nothing.
- 5 No, I didn't write to anybody. I wrote to nobody.
- 6 No, I didn't meet anyone. I met no one.

 $\mathbf{C}$ 

- 1 Everyone's looking out of the window.
- 2 Everyone's hurrying to work.

242

- 3 Everyone's eating.
- 4 Everyone's drinking lemonade.

D

- 1 No, I haven't got anything to eat. I've got nothing to eat. He's got something to eat.
- 2 No, I haven't got anything to do. I've got nothing to do. They've got something to do.
- 3 No, I haven't got anything to drink. I've got nothing to drink.
  - She's got something to drink.
- 4 No, I haven't got anything to read. I've got nothing to read.
  - He's got something to read.

# Lessons 117~118

# 🔲 课文详注 Further notes on the text

- 1. look for, 寻找(强调动作过程); find, 找到(强调寻找的结果)。
- 2. Tommy had already swallowed them! 汤米已经把硬币咽了下去!

旬中用了过去完成时形式 had swallowed。过去完成时用来表示过去两个动作中发生在前的那个动作。显然,旬中咽下硬币的动作发生在夫妇俩能够把硬币从汤米手中抢过来之前。

3. later that morning, 那天上午的晚些时候。 later 是副词 late 的比较级。

### 4. any change

change 是个多义词,既有"零钱"的意思,也有"变化"的意思。此处既可指"硬币";也可指"情况的变化"。这是双关(pun/pʌn/)修辞法。

# 圖 语法 Grammar in use

### 过去进行时

构成:be 的过去式+现在分词。

过去进行时表示过去某时正在进行的情况或动作。过去进行时和一般过去时经常在同一个句子里使用。过去进行时表示过去正在进行的情况或动作、一般过去时则表示比较短暂的动作或事件。过去进行时的时间状语从句一般由 when, while 及 (just) as 等来引导,说明主句中动作发生时的背景。此外,可用 while 或 at the time 等强调同时进行的两种或几种动作。请看例句:

When I was doing the housework, my husband telephoned 244

me from the office.

当我正在干家务时,我丈夫从办公室打电话给我。

While I was listening to the stereo, my mother came into the room.

我正在听立体声节目时,我母亲进房间了。

Just as she was cleaning her shoes, George knocked at the door.

她正在擦鞋时,乔治敲门了。

While I was cooking the dinner, he was working in the garden.

我做饭时,他正在花园里劳作。

# 🎦 词汇学习 Word study

#### 1. swallow v.

### (1) 吞下, 咽下:

Tommy had swallowed the coins.

汤米把硬币吞下去了。

# (2) 抑制,使不流露:

I tried hard to swallow my doubts.

我强忍着不露出怀疑的神色。

She swallowed a smile and sat there still.

她忍住没笑,静静地坐在那里。

### (3) 吞并;侵吞:

Our company was swallowed up by an American company last year.

我们公司去年被一家美国公司吞并了。

Nazi Germany nearly swallowed up the whole Europe in World War | [ .

第二次世界大战中,纳粹德国几乎吞并了整个欧洲。

#### 2. ring v.

### (1) 鸣响;发出清脆的响声;

When I was opening the front door, the telephone rang. 我正开前门时,电话铃响了。

Yesterday morning, my alarm clock didn't ring at 7 o'clock as usual.

昨天早上,我的闹钟没像往常那样在7点钟闹。

### (2) 打电话;按铃:

You said you were going to ring me last night, but you didn't.

你说过你昨晚会给我打电话的,然而你并没有打。

Somebody is ringing the doorbell.

有人在按门铃。

# Ø

# 练习答案 Key to written exercises

#### Lesson 118

A

- 1 He knocked at the door when I was answering the phone.
- 2 He came downstairs when I was having breakfast.
- 3 The phone rang when I was washing the dishes.
- 4 The boss arrived when she was typing a letter.
- 5 The train left when I was buying the tickets.
- 6 It rained heavily when I was driving to London.

В

- 1 When he arrived I was cooking a meal.
- 2 When he arrived I was washing the dishes.

246

- 3 When he arrived I was working in the garden.
- 4 When he arrived I was typing letters.
- 5 When he arrived I was shaving.
- 6 When he arrived I was boiling the milk.
- 7 When he arrived I was phoning my sister.
- 8 When he arrived I was dusting the bedroom.

 $\mathbf{C}$ 

- 1 While I was cooking the dinner, he was having a wash.
- 2 While I was cooking the dinner, he was watching television.
- 3 While I was cooking the dinner, he was cleaning his shoes.
- 4 While I was cooking the dinner, he was listening to the radio.
- 5 While I was cooking the dinner, he was changing his suit.
- 6 While I was cooking the dinner, he was sitting in the dining room.
- 7 While I was cooking the dinner, he was reading the paper.
- 8 While I was cooking the dinner, he was driving home from work.

# Lessons $119 \sim 120$

# 课文详注 Further notes on the text

1. happen to, 发生在……身上。

What happened to you yesterday? 你昨天出什么事了?

2. a friend of mine, 我的朋友之一。

相当于 one of my friends,但前者比后者显得更为亲切。

3. After they had entered the house, they went into the dining room. 他们进到屋里后,走进了饭厅。

After they had entered the house 是时间状语从句, had entered 是过去完成时结构。在以 after 引导的时间状语从句中,用一般过去时或过去完成时没有多少差别。如果强调从句的谓语动作在主句的谓语动作之前完成,就用过去完成时。

**4. turn on**, 打开,拧开(电视、水源、煤气等)。 其反义词为 turn off(关上)。

# 画 语法 Grammar in use

### 过去完成时

构成:had+过去分词。

过去完成时主要用于表示两个事件中一个发生在前,或者说是表示较早的过去。常与现在完成时连用的副词,如 already(已经),ever(曾经),for+表示时间段的词,just(刚刚)和 never(从未)也常与过去完成时连用,以强调事件发生的先后次序。有时我们不一定非得用过去完成时表示先发生的事件,因为意思十分清楚,如:

After I finished, I went home.

我做完后就回家了。

### 请看例句:

She went on holiday after she had taken the exam.

她考试后度假去了。

I ran to the platform quickly, but the train had already left.

我赶快跑到站台上,但是火车已经开走了。

We had had dinner before they arrived.

他们到达之前我们就已吃饭了。

The patient had died when the doctor arrived.

大夫到达时病人已经死了。

# 间汇学习 Word study

### 1. enter v.

### (1) 进入: 穿入:

After they had entered the house, they went into the dining room.

他们进入了房子后,就去了餐厅。

The bullet entered his heart.

子弹射入了他的心脏。

### (2) 参加;加入:

Four students from our university entered the final contest.

我们大学的 4 名学生进入了竞赛的决赛。

He entered politics when he was 27.

他在27岁时步入了政界。

### 2. happen v.

# (1) 发生:

How did the accident happen?

事故是怎么发生的?

A strange thing happened to a friend of mine a year ago.

一年之前,一件奇怪的事发生在我的一位朋友身上。

### (2) 碰巧,恰好(to):

I happened to meet her on my way home.

在回家的路上,我碰巧遇见了她。

I happen to know that professor.

我正好认识那位教授。



# 练习答案 Key to written exercises

#### Lesson 120

Α

- 1 He dropped the vase after he had taken it into the living room.
- 2 He bought another car after he had sold his old one.
- 3 He swept the floor after he had dusted everything.
- 4 She drank the milk after she had boiled it.
- 5 He turned off the television after he had seen the programme.
- 6 He went to bed after he had done his homework.

В

- 1 Yes, I have just seen it. I had never seen it before.
- 2 Yes, I have just read it. I had never read it before.
- 3 Yes, I have just tried it. I had never tried it before.
- 4 Yes, I have just been there. I had never been there before.
- 5 Yes, I have just written a letter in English. I had never written a letter in English before.

250

6 Yes, I have just watched this programme. I had never watched this programme before.

 $\mathbf{C}$ 

- 1 It was too late. He had already painted it.
- 2 It was too late. She had already dusted it.
- 3 It was too late. You had already telephoned him.
- 4 It was too late. You had already corrected it.
- 5 It was too late. They had already shut it.
- 6 It was too late. She had already made it.

D

- 1 I went to the doctor after I had made an appointment.
- 2 The boss left the office after he had finished work.
- 3 My wife went out after she had finished the housework.
- 4 My teacher gave me my exercise book after he had corrected it.
- 5 My sister went on holiday after she had taken the examination.
- 6 I bought a new car after I had sold my old one.

# Lessons 121~122

# **二** 课文详注 Further notes on the text

- 1....but I forgot to take them with me. ……但是我忘了拿走。 forget to do sth. 表示"忘了做某事", them 指两本字典。
- 2. put it on,戴上它。

这里的 it 指 a hat,以避免重复。put on 是"戴上"、"穿上"的意思。如果它的宾语是一个名词,这个名词可放在 put on 之后,也可放在 put 和 on 之间。如果是代词,就必须放在 put 和 on 之间。如:

Put on your coat./Put your cout on. 穿上外衣。

### 但只能说:

Put it on.

把它穿上。

# ☐ 语法 Grammar in use

### 定语从句

定语从句像形容词一样起修饰作用,但位于所修饰的名词之后。定语从句由关系代词引导,紧跟在它所修饰的成分后面。关系代词 who, whom 与 that 修饰人, which 与 that 修饰东西。关系代词指代从句的主语或宾语,同时又充当连接词,把从句和主句连接起来。请看例句:

(1) 关系代词作从句的主语(who/which/that):

The dog which/that is carrying the basket is mine.
叼着篮子的那只狗是我的。

He's the porter who /that carried my suitcase.

他就是那个扛着我的衣箱的搬运工。

(2) 关系代词作从句的宾语(whom/that/which):

They' re the windows which / that the children broke yesterday.

这些就是孩子们昨天打碎的窗户。

She's the lady whom I served yesterday.

她就是我昨天服务过的那位女士。

# ☐ 词汇学习 Word study

- 1. recognize v.
- (1) 认出;认识:

I recognize him now.

我现在认出他来了。

Can you recognize this tune?

你能听出这支曲调吗?

(2) 承认;确认:

I recognize that he is more capable than I am.

我承认他比我更有能力。

They recognized Richard as his lawful heir.

他们确认理查德为他的合法继承人。

Are British medical qualifications recognized in other European countries?

英国的医生执照在欧洲其他国家能否得到承认?

- 2. serve v.
- (1) 服务;接待;侍候:

Are you being served, sir?

先生,有人为您服务吗?

A young waiter served them .

一位年轻的侍者侍候他们进餐。

### (2) 供应;摆出(食物或饮料等):

What time is breakfast served in this hotel? 这个饭店里什么时候供应早餐? Serve it to the ladies first. 把它先端给女士们。

### (3) 为……服务/服役;任职:

The old cook has served the family for 30 years. 这位老厨师已为这家干了30年了。
He began to serve in the Navy in 1960.
他从1960年起开始在海军服役。

# 赵 练习答案 Key to written exercises

#### Lesson 122

Α

- 1 This is the car which the mechanic repaired yesterday.
- 2 He is the man whom I invited to the party.
- 3 These are the things which I bought yesterday.
- 4 He is the man who came here last week.
- 5 He is the policeman who caught the thieves.
- 6 She is the nurse who looked after me.
- 7 She is the woman whom I met at the party.
- 8 I am the person who wrote to you.

В

- 1 Who met him? That woman?
  Yes, she's the woman who met him.
- 2 Who sat there? That man?

254

Yes, he's the man who sat there.

- 3 Who made it? That woman?
  Yes, she's the woman who made it.
- 4 Who read it? That man?
  Yes, he's the man who read it.
- 5 Who shut it? That man?
  Yes, he's the man who shut it.
- 6 Who took it? That woman?
  Yes, she's the woman who took it.
- 7 Who told me? That man?
  Yes, he's the man who told me.
- 8 Who saw me? That woman?
  Yes, she's the woman who saw me.

 $^{\rm c}$ 

- 1 Whom did you see? That man?
  Yes, he's the man whom I saw.
- Whom did you telephone? That woman?
  Yes, she's the woman whom I telephoned.
- 3 Whom did you invite? That man?
  Yes, he's the man whom I invited.
- 4 Whom did you take to the cinema? That man?
  Yes, he's the man whom I took to the cinema.
- 5 Whom did you find in the garden? That man?
  Yes, he's the man whom I found in the garden.
- 6 Whom did you drive to London? That woman?
  Yes, she's the woman whom I drove to London.
- 7 Whom did you hear? That woman?
  Yes, she's the woman whom I heard.

8 Whom did you remember? That man? Yes, he's the man whom I remembered.

# Lessons $123 \sim 124$

# 🛄 课文详注 Further notes on the text

1. What a beautiful ship! 多漂亮的轮船啊!

what 引导的感叹句通常是由 What + a(n) + 形容词 + 名词构成的。

2. That's right.对。

这句是对上面附加疑问句的回答。上面一句虽用否定形式提问,但回答则根据事实来决定是用肯定或是否定形式。That's right 是肯定的回答,相当于 Yes, it is(那正是我)。

- 3. grow a beard, 留胡子。
- 4. shave it off, 把胡子刮掉。
  it 指 a beard。

### 5. 定语成分

standing behind the counter 和 repairing the road 是现在分词短语,作后置定语,分别修饰 The man, The woman 和 The men。 I served yesterday 和 I saw yesterday 是定语从句,分别修饰 the man, the woman 和 the men。此处关系代词 whom 省略了。 I bought yesterday 和 I found in the garden 是定语从句,分别修饰 the book, the books 和 the kitten。关系代词 which 或 that 省略了。

# 圖 语法 Grammar in use

### 定语从句中的省略

当关系代词代表主语并且从句中的谓语动词是(现在)进行时态时,关系代词及助动词 be 均可省略。如果关系代词在从句中代表宾语,则往往可以省略。此外,定语从句可用介词结尾。

. . .

### 请分别看以下的例句:

The woman standing behind the counter served me.

站在柜台后边的那位妇女为我服务/招待了我。

This is the book I bought yesterday.

这就是我昨天买的那本书。

The man I served was wearing a hat.

我招待过的那个人当时戴着一顶帽子。

That's the ship we travelled on.

那就是我们旅行时乘的船。

That's the man I told you about.

那就是我告诉过你有关情况的那个人。

# 词汇学习 Word study

#### 1. travel v.

### (1) 旅行;游历:

He said that if he had a lot of money he would travel around the world.

他说,如果他有很多钱的话,他将会周游全世界。

### (2) 行进;(被)传送:

Light travels faster than sound at the speed of 300,000 kilometres per second.

光速比声速要快,为每秒钟30万公里。

The news didn't travel us fast as we had expected.

这消息传播得不如我们所预料得那样快。

#### 2. of fer v.

### (1) (主动)给予;提供;

He is offered a job in Canada.

有人提供给他一份在加拿大的工作。

We offered some coffee to the guests. 我们为客人们提供了咖啡。

# (2) 提出;出(价):

Do you have any good suggestions to offer? 你能否提供一些好的建议? I'll offer you £30,000 for the house. 这所房子我愿出3万英镑买下来。

#### (3)(主动)表示愿意,提议:

He offered to help me with my research paper. 他表示愿意帮助我一起做我的研究论文。 'I could lend you some books,' Jane offered. "我可以借你一些书,"简自告奋勇地提议。

#### 3. grow v.

#### (1) 生长;成长;

His hair has grown too long. 他的头发长得太长了。 The trees have grown rapidly. 树木生长得快。

### (2) 使生长;留(须发):

He grew a beard during the trip.
他在旅行时留了胡子。
We grew a lot of roses in our garden.
我们在自己的花园里种植了大量的玫瑰花。

# 赵 练习答案 Key to written exercises

#### Lesson 124

A

She is the woman I drove to London.

- 2 That's the film I saw.
- 3 That's the man I spoke to.
- 4 They are the thieves the police caught.
- 5 These are the letters I typed.
- 6 These are the people you asked me about.

#### В

- 1 Which man? That man?
  Yes, that's the man I saw yesterday.
- Which car? That car?
  Yes, that's the car I repaired yesterday.
- 3 Which woman? That woman?
  Yes, that's the woman I drove to London yesterday.
- 4 Which umbrella? That umbrella?
  Yes, that's the umbrella I bought yesterday.
- 5 Which medicine? That medicine?
  Yes, that's the medicine I took yesterday.
- 6 Which man? That man?Yes, that's the man I invited to my house yesterday.

#### C

- 1 That's right. This is the village I wrote to you about.
- 2 That's right. He is the person I have heard about.
- 3 That's right. This is the test I spoke to you about.
- 4 That's right. She is the woman I read about.
- 5 That's right. This is something (new) I haven't thought about.
- 6 That's right. This is something I must decide about.

# Lessons 125~126

# **二** 课文详注 Further notes on the text

1. Can't you come in and have tea now, Peter? 彼得,你现在能进来喝茶吗?

这是否定疑问句,表示邀请。请参见 Lessons 77~78 语法部分。

- Don't you remember? 你不记得了吗? 这也是否定疑问句。
- 3. don't need to = needn't。 表示"不必",是 must 和 have to 的一般现在时否定式。
- 4. a pleasant surprise, 意想不到的好事,令人惊喜的事。

# ■ 语法 Grammar in use

must, have to 和 needn't

这 3 个词都表示必要性。在前面已对 must 和 have to 介绍过。must 是情态助动词,而 have to 是普通动词,二者在肯定句中一般可以互换,表示不可逃避的义务或责任。must 更带有说话人的主观色彩,而 have to 则更强调客观要求和外界影响。must 一般只能表达现在的必要性,而 have to 则可以表达过去或将来的必要性。请比较:

(Must you go now? 你必须现在就走吗?

Yes, I have to leave at once.

是的,我不得不马上就走。

Yes, I must leave at once.

【是的,我必须马上就走。

I shall have to leave London tomorrow.

我明早得离开伦敦。

I had to stop smoking because it was forbidden in my company.

因为我所在的公司内禁止抽烟,所以我不得不停止了吸

如果我们用 must 来提问,则只能用 necdn't 来表达否定的问 答。needn't 还可以理解为 have to 的否定回答。needn't (don't need to)和 don't have to 都表示不必要;而 mustn't 却 表示绝对禁止,在说话人看来根本没有选择余地。请看例句:

{Must she leave early?

她必须早走吗? She needn't leave early.

**【她不必早走**。

(Do you have to take a taxi?

你必须乘出租汽车吗?

I don't have to/need to take a taxi.

**【我不必乘出租车。** 

You mustn't turn left.

你不能左转弯。(表示绝对禁止)



# 词汇学习 Word study

- 1. mean
- (1) 意味着,即:

It's raining! That means you don't need to water the garden.

下雨了! 这就是说,你不必给花园浇水了。

(2) (词语)表示……意思;

What does 'perfume' mean in English?
"perfume" 一词在英语中是什么意思?
The green light means 'Go on.'
绿灯的意思是"继续向前"。

#### (3) 意指; 意欲:

What I mean is that we'll have to go back and look for it.

我的意思是:我们必须回去寻找它。

He didn't mean to hurt you.

他的本意并不是想伤害你。

#### 2. water v.

### (1) 浇(洒)水;供水;喂水:

The garden is very dry, I'm going to water it tomorrow morning.

花园里很干了,明早我准备给它浇些水。

Tim is watering his lovely little dog.

蒂姆正在给他那只可爱的小狗喂水。

### (2) 充满水;充满泪水;流口水:

He felt sad and his eyes watered a little.

他感到难过,眼睛有点儿湿润了。

Ice cream always makes his mouth water.

冰淇淋总能让他馋得淌口水。

### (3) 搀水冲淡;加水稀释:

Someone had been watering the milk.

有人往牛奶里搀了水。

He always waters drinks and sells them to tourists.

他总是在饮料里搀水并将之卖给游客们。

# B

# 练习答案 Key to written exercises

#### Lesson 126

#### A

- 1 Does she have to decide immediately? She doesn't have to decide immediately.
- 2 Must she decide immediately? She needn't decide immediately.
- 3 Do we have to take a taxi?
  We don't have to take a taxi.
- 4 Must we take a taxi?
  We needn't take a taxi.

#### В

- 1 I have to telephone him, too.
- 2 Mary has to wait for him, too.
- 3 Jim has to meet her, too.
- 4 Tom and Mary have to travel by ship, too.

#### C

- 1 Do you really have to telephone him?
- 2 Does Mary really have to wait for him?
- 3 Does Jim really have to meet her?
- 4 Do Tom and Mary really have to travel by ship?

# Lessons 127~128

# 🛄 课文详注 Further notes on the text

1. I thought so. 我也这样想。

so 是代词,意为"这样"、"如此"。 I think so 的否定式为 I don't think so(我不这样认为)。类似用 so 的短句如:

I hope so.

我希望如此。

Lexpect so.

我期待如此。

I told you so.

我这么告诉过你的。

- 2. have another look, 再(仔细)看一眼。
- 3. look old, 看上去老。

这里 look 是系动词,后跟表语。

- 4. at least, 至少。
- 5. I'm sure she is. 我肯定她有 40 岁了。

其后省略了 at least forty。

6. not more than twenty-nine myself,我自己还没 29 岁。

其中 not more than 是"不超过"、"不到"的意思。这里反身代词 myself 是 I 的同位语,用来加强语气。

She did it herself.

这事是她自己做的。

# ■ 语法 Grammar in use

表示猜测和推断的情态助动词 must 和 can't(1)

表示最有力的推论的最常用的形式是 must 和 can't。这时,它

们一般与系动词 be 连用。肯定的推断用 must be 来表示,否定的推断用 can't be 来表示,而不用 mustn't。请看例句:

He can't be a doctor. He must be a dentist.

他不会是个医生。他一定是位牙医。

She can't be Danish. She must be Norwegian.

她不会是丹麦人。她一定是挪威人。

He can't be shaving. He must be having a bath.

他不可能在剃胡子。他一定是在洗澡。

It can't be cheap. It must be expensive.

它不会便宜。一定价格昂贵。

He can't be ill. He must be tired.

他不可能生病了。他肯定是累了。

# 🍘 词汇学习 Word study

- 1. famous adj.
- (1) 著名的;出名的;

She's a very famous actress.

她是一位非常著名的女演员。

(2) 〈口〉第一流的;极好的:

To my surprise, he had a famous appetite.

让我感到惊讶的是,他有着极好的胃口。

This is famous weather for a stroll.

这是散步最理想的天气。

#### 2. at least

(1) 至少:

This antique vase is worth at least £ 20,000.

这只古花瓶至少价值两万英镑。

At least, you should consider our suggestions.

266

至少你应该考虑一下我们的建议。

### (2) 反正;无论如何;不管怎样:

He has no plans to go abroad yet, at least as far as I know.

他尚未有出国的计划,至少据我所知是这样的。

That party wasn't exciting at all, but at least it filled the time.

那个聚会一点儿都不令人兴奋,但不管怎样,它使人打发 了那段时光。

# 练习答案 Key to written exercises

#### Lesson 128

Α

- 1 He has to be here at six o'clock.
- 2 I think he is probably busy.
- 3 He has to be at the office early tomorrow.
- 4 I think he is probably sleeping.
- 5 I think he is probably French.
- 6 He has to be in France next week.
- 7 I think he is probably an engineer.

В

- 1 I don't think so. She can't be Italian.
  She must be Greek.
- 2 I don't think so. He can't be English. He must be American.
- 3 I don't think so. They can't be Canadian. They must be Australian.

- 4 I don't think so. He can't be a mechanic. He must be an engineer.
- 5 I don't think so. He can't be a bus conductor. He must be a bus driver.
- 6 I don't think so. He can't be a sales rep. He must be the boss.
- 7 I don't think so. He can't be twenty-four. He must be thirty.
- 8 I don't think so. They can't be five. They must be seven.
- 9 I don't think so. He can't be seventy-six. He must be over eighty.
- 10 I don't think so. She can't be fifty-five.
  She must be under fifty.
- 11 I don't think so. It can't be the 21st today.
  It must be the 20th.
- 12 I don't think so. It can't be Tuesday today.
  It must be Wednesday.
- 13 I don't think so. It can't be the 2nd today.
  It must be the 3rd.
- 14 I don't think so. It can't be cheap.
  It must be expensive.
- 15 I don't think so. It can't be easy. It must be difficult.
- 16 I don't think so. She can't be old. She must be young.
- 17 I don't think so. They can't be early. They must be late.

- 18 I don't think so. He can't be reading.
  He must be sleeping.
- 19 I don't think so. They can't be listening to the radio. They must be watching television.
- 20 I don't think so. She can't be retiring.
  She must be looking for a new job.

# Lessons $129 \sim 130$

# **二** 课文详注 Further notes on the text

- 1. Where do you think you are? 你认为你现在是在哪儿? do you think 是用在特殊疑问句中的插入语,用来征询见解或表达看法。因为句中插入语已经是疑问式,主谓倒装了,所以
  - you are 的位置不能再对调了。插入语一般是对句子加一些附加的解释,在句子中作独立成分。常用来作插入语的结构有 I hope, I think, I'm afraid, you know 等。插入语可以位于句尾或句中,有时也可出现在疑问句中。
- 2. must have been doing sth., 一定/准是在做某事。 这种结构用来表示对过去正进行的事情的推测。下文中的can't have been 是 can't have been driving 的省略式,在意思上与 must have been driving 正相反。
- 3. That's why I didn't see the sign. 所以我才没看见那牌子。 why I didn't see the sign 作 is 的表语从句,以 why 引导的从句用来解释事情的原因。
- 4....you'd better take my advice! ……你最好还是听从我的劝告吧!

take one's advice 是"听从劝告"的意思。

# ■ 语法 Grammar in use

### 表示猜测和推断的情态助动词 must 和 can't(2)

must 与 can't 不仅能表达对现在和将来的猜测和推断,而且能表达对过去的猜测和推断——这时可用 must have been 表示肯定的推断,用 can't have been(而不是 mustn't have been)来270

表示否定的推断,如后面跟进行时则表示对过去正在进行的动 作的猜测。请看例句:

You must have been driving at seventy miles an hour.

你当时肯定正以每小时 70 英里的速度行驶。

I didn't see it. I must have been dreaming.

我没看见。我当时一定是在胡思乱想吧。

She can't have been 29. She must have been 36.

她那时肯定不会是29岁,她一定36岁了。

He can't have been reading. He must have been sleeping. 他那时肯定不是在看书,他准是在睡觉。

# √プ 词汇学习 Word study

- 1. charge
- (1) 罚款;使承受经济负担:

He was charged by the policeman for speeding. 他因开车超速而被警察罚款。

(2) 要(价);收(费);

The hotel charged them £ 900 for one night. 饭店向他们索要900英镑作为住一晚的费用。

(3) 指控:指责:

They charged him with murder. 他们指控他犯了谋杀罪。

- 2. dream v.
- (1) 做梦:梦见:

He dreamt about his grandmother last night.

他昨天夜里梦见他的祖母了。

Do you often dream at night?

你晚上经常做梦吗?

### (2) 梦想;幻想:

She dreamed that one day she would be as free as a bird. 她幻想着有一天自己能像鸟儿那般自由。

I once dreamed of becoming a famous doctor.

我曾一度梦想着成为一位著名的医生。

# (3) 出神;心不在焉;空想:

Don't dream away your life!

不要在想入非非中虚度你的人生。

Sorry, I didn't see the sign. I must have been dreaming.

对不起,我没看见那牌子。我一定是思想开小差了。

#### 3. wave v.

# (1) 招手;挥手示意:

He waved us quiet.

他挥手要我们别出声。

She waved me goodbye.

她向我挥手告别。

### (2) 起伏;飘动:

The flag is waving in the wind.

旗帜正在风中飘扬。

She was attracted by the waving sea.

她被那汹涌起伏的大海吸引。

# Ø

# 练习答案 Key to written exercises

#### Lesson 130

Ā

- 1 He didn't come to work yesterday. He must have been ill.
- 2 He didn't come to the office this morning. He had to stay at home.

272

- 3 I don't think she was Austrian. She must have been German.
- 4 I lost my pen so I had to buy a new one.
- 5 He forgot his case so he had to return home.
- 6 She didn't hear the phone. She must have been sleeping.

#### В

- 1 I don't think they were. They can't have been Canadian. They must have been Australian.
- 2 I don't think she was. She can't have been Finnish. She must have been Russian.
- 3 I don't think they were. They can't have been Japanese.
  They must have been Chinese.
- 4 I don't think they were. They can't have been butchers. They must have been bakers.
- 5 I don't think she was. She can't have been a dentist.
  She must have been a doctor.
- 6 I don't think he was. He can't have been a sales rep. He must have been the boss.
- 7 I don't think she was. She can't have been seventeen. She must have been twenty-one.
- 8 I don't think they were. They can't have been five. They must have been seven.
- 9 I don't think he was. He can't have been seventy-six. He must have been over eighty.
- 10 I don't think she was. She can't have been fifty-five.
  She must have been under fifty.
- I don't think it was. It can't have been the 17th yesterday.
  It must have been the 16th yesterday.

- 12 I don't think it was. It can't have been Tuesday yesterday. It must have been Wednesday yesterday.
- 13 I don't think it was. It can't have been the 19th yesterday.
  It must have been the 20th yesterday.
- 14 I don't think it was. It can't have been cheap.
  It must have been expensive.
- 15 I don't think it was. It can't have been easy. It must have been difficult.
- 16 I don't think she was. She can't have been old. She must have been young.
- 17 I don't think he was. He can't have been ill. He must have been tired.
- 18 I don't think they were. They can't have been listening to the radio.
  - They must have been watching television.
- 19 I don't think she was. She can't have been retiring. She must have been looking for a new job.
- 20 I don't think they were. They can't have been sitting. They must have been standing.

# Lessons 131 ~ 132

# 🛄 课文详注 Further notes on the text

- 1. make up our minds, 打定主意。
  make up one's mind 是表示下定决心的一种固定用法。
- 2. Will you travel by sea or by air? 你们乘船去,还是乘飞机去? 这是一个选择疑问句。by sea 表示"乘船"。by air 表示"乘飞机"。
- 3. take a long time, 花很长时间。

# ■ 语法 Grammar in use

### 情态助动词 may 表示可能性

may 或 might 都表示"可能"、"也许"。通常既可以用 may,也可以用 might,不过 might 所表示的可能性要比 may 小,且当情况是虚拟的时只能用 might 而不能用 may。

(1) may 表示现在或将来的可能性:may + 动词原形:

The bread may be fresh.

面包可能是新鲜的。

He may be reading.

他可能正在看书。

I may go abroad.

我可能出国。

They may offer me a job.

他们也许会给我提供一份工作。

(2) may 也可表示过去的可能性,过去式为: may have (done):

He was late. He may have been busy.

他迟到了。他可能一直很忙。

I went out last night, and she may have been reading. 我昨天晚上出去了,她可能一直在看书。

It may have been right.

也可能是对的。

They may have been in the garden.

他们可能那时一直在花园里。

### 请比较:

He is working.

他在工作。(对事实确信不疑)

He may be working.

他可能在工作。(对现在可能发生的事情的猜测)

He must be working.

他肯定在工作。(对现在所发生事情有根据的推论) He may have been working.

他那时可能正在工作。(对过去所发生事情的作一)

# 词汇学习 Word study

#### 1. worry v.

### (1) 担忧;发愁:

Mum always worries too much and it makes her tired.

妈妈总是过度忧虑,而这使她疲惫。

She's worried that she might lose her job soon.

她担心也许很快她就会丢掉她现在的工作。

### (2) 困批;使不安宁:

Doesn't it worry you that his health is becoming worse? 他的身体越来越差,你不担心吗?

She is always worrying him for presents.

她总是缠着他要礼物。

#### 2. look after

#### (1) 照料,照顾,照管:

Who's going to look after the garden when we are away?

我们离开时谁来照料花园呢?

Sally will help us to look after the children tomorrow.

萨莉明天会帮我们照看孩子们的。

### (2) 注意;关心:

Don't worry about me—I can look after myself.

别担心——我会照顾好自己的。

The doctor advised him to look after his health.

医生建议他要注意自己的健康。

# Ø

# 练习答案 Key to written exercises

#### Lesson 132

Α

- 1 Yes, Martin is talking to Gary.
- 2 They may go abroad.
- 3 Gary's wife wants to go to Egypt.
- 4 They will travel by sea.
- 5 Yes, it may be cheaper.
- 6 Yes, it takes a long time.
- 7 Because his wife worries too much.

В

- 1 I'm not sure. They may be Australian:
- 2 I'm not sure. She may be Russian.
- 3 I'm not sure. They may be Chinese.

- 4 I'm not sure. They may have been bakers.
- 5 I'm not sure. She may have been a doctor.
- 6 I'm not sure. He may be the boss.
- 7 I'm not sure. She may be twenty-one.
- 8 I'm not sure. They may have been seven.
- 9 I'm not sure. He may have been over eighty.
- 10 I'm not sure. She may have been under fifty.
- 11 I'm not sure. It may be the 16th today.
- 12 I'm not sure. It may have been Wednesday yesterday.
- 13 I'm not sure. It may be the 20th today.
- 14 I'm not sure. It may be expensive.
- 15 I'm not sure. It may have been difficult.
- 16 I'm not sure. She may have been young.
- 17 I'm not sure. He may have been tired.
- 18 I'm not sure. They may be watching television.
- 19 I'm not sure. She may have been looking for a new job.
- 20 1'm not sure. They may be standing.

# Lessons 133~134

# 🔲 课文详注 Further notes on the text

1. Have you just made a new film, Miss Marsh? 您刚拍完一部电影吗,马什小姐?

make 可表示"作出某种举动",其意义根据宾语而定。本句中的 make 可理解为"拍(摄)"。

2. make another,再拍一部。

之后省略了film。

3. by our reporter = written by our reporter o

# ☐ 语法 Grammar in use

#### 需改变时态的间接陈述句

间接引语里常要改变时态,这是因为原来讲的话与转述这些话之间有一段间隔。选择哪种恰当的形式取决于转述者的着眼点。在间接引语里通常并不确切地重复讲话者说过的话。转述通常发生在过去,所以引述动词通常是过去时。因此,转述时从句的时态通常要"往回移"(backshift)。一条普遍的规则是:现在时变为过去时,过去时变为过去完成时。为过去时的情态助动词和过去完成时在转述时不变,因为不可能再往回移了。

使用间接引语主要是为了简洁、紧凑地把说话内容转述给第 3 者。请看下面直接引语变成间接引语时在时态等方面必须作 出的相应变化:

(1) 一般现在时改为 一般过去时:

'I'm thirsty,' she said.

"我渴了,"她说。⇒

She said (that) she was thirsty, 她说她渴了。

### (2) 现在进行时改为过去进行时:

"I'm having a rest, she told them.

"我正在休息,"她告诉他们。->

She told them (that) she was having a rest.

她告诉他们说她当时正在休息。

#### (3) 现在完成时改成过去完成时:

"I've just made a new film, 'she told me.

"我刚完成一部新影片,"她告诉我。⇒

She told me (that) she had just made a new film.

她告诉我说她刚完成一部新影片。

### (4) 一般将来时改成过去将来时(一般用 would + 动词原形);

'I'll have to ask my husband, 'she said.

"我得问问我丈夫,"她说。⇒

She said (that) she would have to ask her husband. 她说她将得去问问她丈夫。

### (5) 情态动词由现在时改成过去时或条件时态:

'I can see you tomorrow,' she said.

"我明天可以见你,"她说。⇒

She said (that) she could see me the next day.

她说她下一天可以见我。

'I'll help you, 'she said.

"我将帮助你的,"她说。→

She said (that) she would help me.

她说她将帮助我。

'I may return at six o' clock,' she told me.

"我可能6点钟回来,"她告诉我说。⇒

She told me (that) she might return at six o' clock.

她告诉我说她可能 6 点钟回来。

#### (6) 为过去时或条件时态的情态助动词不变:

"I could see you tomorrow," she said.

"我明天可能会见你,"她说 ⇒

She said (that) she could see me the next day.

她说她第2天会见我。

'I would complain if I were you, 'she told me.

"如果我是你的话,我就抱怨,"她说。→

She told me (that) she would complain if she were me. 她告诉我说,如果她是我的话她就会抱怨的。

# ☑️ 词汇学习 Word study

#### 1. wonder

(1) 感到好奇;想要知道:

I wonder why he hasn't come.

我很想知道他为什么没来。

I was wondering if I could borrow your bicycle.

我在想是否能借用你的自行车。

(2) 感到惊讶(或诧异):

She wonders at his rudeness.

她对他的无礼感到惊讶。

I shouldn't wonder if she is elected.

如果她当选,我不会感到惊奇。

### **2.** sensational $ad_1$ .

(1) 令人兴奋的;轰动性的;

The discovery was sensational.

那个发现引起了轰动。

(2) (贬)耸人听闻的;企图追求轰动效应的;

The sensational news report didn't have much effect on them.

郡起耸入听闻的新闻报导对他们并无多大影响。

#### (3) (口)非常好;给人深刻印象的:

She looks sensational in that dress! 她穿那条裙子的样子真令人难忘!

# Ø

# 练习答案 Key to written exercises

#### Lesson 134

#### Α

- 1 Yes, she has.
- 2 A reporter.
- 3 She says she is going to retire.
- 4 Because she is going to retire.
- 5 Kate bought a newspaper.
- 6 Miss Marsh arrived at London Airport.
- 7 She was wearing a blue dress and a mink coat.

В

- 1 He said he was busy.
- 2 He said she was cold.
- 3 She said the book was interesting.
- 4 He said they were hungry.

C

- 1 He told me he was working.
- 2 They told me she was leaving.
- 3 She told me they were joking.

282

4 He told me Tom was waiting.

D

- 1. He told me he had met him.
- 2 He told me he had lost it.
- 3 She told me it had stopped.
- 4 They told me she had arrived.

# Lessons 135~136

# 课文详注 Further notes on the text

- 1. He won't let me make another film.他不会再让我拍电影了。 句中动词 let 后面的不定式不带 to,类似的例子如动词 have, make 等。
- 2. introduce A to B, 将 A 介绍给 B,向 B 介绍 A。
- 3. get married, 结婚。
- 4. the latest, 最新消息。
- 5. ...she would have to ask her future husband. ……她得问问她的未婚夫。

这部分是从句,在整句话中作 said 的直接宾语。would have to ask 是过去将来时结构。因为主句的谓语动词是 said,相对过去的这一时间点的将来就是过去的将来,所以用过去将来时结构。

# 画 语法 Grammar in use

1. let 的用法

let 与一般动词不同,它用于动词+宾语+动词原形结构,即 let 后面可接名词或代词,再接不带 to 的动词不定式。其意思为"允许"、"让"。请看例句:

She lets her son play in the garden.

她让她的儿子在花园里玩。

Her parents wouldn't let her go out with that boy.

她的父母不允许她与那个男孩子一起出去。

Just let me try!

就让我试试吧!

They didn't let the guests smoke in the lobby. 他们不允许客人们在大厅吸烟。

### 2. 间接引语中情态助动词由现在时如何变为过去时

(参见 Lessons 133~134 语法部分。)

- 'I can understand English,' she told me.
- "我懂英语、"她告诉我说。→

She told me she could understand English. 她告诉我说她懂英语。

'I can't afford a new car,' she said to me.

"我买不起一辆新车,"她对我说。⇒

She told me she couldn't afford a new car. 她告诉我说她买不起新车。

- 'It will rain tomorrow,' she told me.
- "明天下雨,"她告诉我说。⇒

She told me it would rain tomorrow.

她告诉我说明天下雨。

- 'George won't travel by air,' he said.
- "乔治将不乘飞机旅行,"他说。⇒

He said George wouldn't travel by air.

他说乔治将不乘飞机旅行。

- 'I may go to the cinema this evening,' he said.
- "我可能今晚去看电影,"他说。⇒

He said he might go to the cinema this evening. 他说他可能今晚去看电影。

'I may not retire,' he said.

"我可能不退休,"他说。⇒

He said he might not retire.

他说他可能不退休。

# $\bigcap$

## 词汇学习 Word study

#### 1. introduce v.

#### (1) 介绍;引导:

He was introduced to Mrs. Black at that party. 在那个聚会上,他被介绍跟布莱克太太相识了。
May I introduce my future husband to you?
让我介绍你跟我的未婚夫认识好吗?

### (2) 引进;推行:

Panda has been introduced into Japan from China. 大熊猫由中国引入日本。

Economic reforms have been introduced in China. 中国推行了经济方面的改革。

#### (3) 引领;(初次)提出:

The guest was introduced into a room upstairs. 客人被领进了楼上的一个房间,
He introduced a new topic for our discussion.
他提出了一个新的议题供我们讨论。

### 2. really adv.

### (1) 真正地;确实地:

Are you really going to retire?
你真的准备退休吗?
He wants to know what really happened.
他想知道事实的真相。

### (2) 〈用以加强语气〉实在;其实;

I really don't mind. 事事始工人善

我真的不介意。

You don't really expect him to believe that, do you? 你其实并不指望他相信那一点,对吗?

### (3) /表示疑问、惊讶、恼怒等>真的;是吗;真是的:

'It is said that she's going to retire.
听说她要退休了

 $\frac{1}{3}$ Really ?

英的吗?

Oh really! It's terrible for him.

(喔,真是的!这对他来说太可怕了。

#### 

#### Lesson 136

#### Α

- She is still not sure.
- 2 No, she can't.
- 3 His name is Carlos.
- 4 They will get married next week.
- 5 She is staying at her London Hotel.
- 6 Yes, she does.
- 7 Liz says the news is sensational.

#### В

- 1 He said Penny would open the window.
- 2 She said she would change some money.
- 3 He said it would rain tomorrow.
- 4 He said they would arrive later.
- 5 She said he would repair it.
- 6 He said he would write to him.

- 1 He told me he could understand English.
- 2 She told me she could recognize him.
- 3 They told me they could afford it.
- 4 She told me she could remember him.
- 5. He told me he could change it.
- 6 He told me he could finish it.

Ð

- 1 They said they might arrive tomorrow.
- 2 He told me he might retire.
- 3 She said she might telephone him.
- 4 He told me she might sell it.
- 5 He said she might recognize you.
- 6 She told me she might finish it.

# Lessons $137 \sim 138$

# 📖 课文详注 Further notes on the text

1. do the football pools, 下足球赛的赌注。

football pools 是英国流行的一种赌博方式,靠在足球比赛结果上的赌注来决定输赢。

2. What will you do if you win a lot of money? 如果你赢了许多钱,你打算做什么呢?

if you win a lot of money 是一个表示条件的状语从句。在英文中,条件是指某一事情(状语从句中的动作)实现之后其他事情(主句中的动作)才能发生,通常译为"假如"。如果条件状语从句用于询问或谈论十分可能发生的事情,那么条件状语从句中常用一般现在时,而主句中则用一般将来时。a lot of 既可与可数名词也可与不可数名词连用。(请参见本课语法部分。)

- 3. buy sb. sth. = buy sth. sb. o
- 4. see the world, 看世界。
  travel round the world, 周游世界。
  - 二者有异曲同工之处。
- 5. What'll we do then? 那时我们怎么办呢? 句中 then 意为"到那时"(指将来)。
- 6. a pleasant dream, 一个美好的梦。
- 7. depend on, 取决于,依靠。

# ■ 语法 Grammar in use

### 第1类条件句

如果我们认为将来的事件是可能发生的,就可用第1类条件句去描述将会发生什么事或不会发生什么事。其基本结构是:If

+ 一般现在时 + 将来时(或情态助动词),如:

If it rains tomorrow, we won't go to the seaside.

如果明天下雨,我们就不去海边。

正从句中的现在时表示需具备的条件,主句中的 shall/will 将来时表示可能的结果。具备的条件是真实的,可能真的下雨。如果是这样,它就会有真实的结果。这就是为什么这样的陈述句常被称为"开放"条件句或"真实"条件句的原因。事实上,在第1类条件句中,一切现在时态都能用在正之后,而不仅仅是一般现在时。请看例句:

If he falls, he'll hurt himself.
如果他摔倒了,他会伤着自己的。
If you don't hurry, we'll miss the train.
你要是不赶紧点儿,我们就会误了火车。
If you feel better, you can get up.
你要是感觉好些了的话,你就能起床了。
If I am better tomorrow, I will get up.
如果我明天感觉好些了,我就起床下地。
If I have a headache, I will take an aspirin.
我要是头疼的话就会服用一片阿司匹林。
If I can afford it, I will buy it.
要是我买得起的话我就会买它。

### う 词汇学习 Word study

- 1. depend v. (on)
- (1) 视……而定;取决于:

When are you coming back? 你什么时候回来? Well, it depends. 哦,看情况吧。

It depends on whether they win or not. 这取决于他们是否能赢。

#### (2) 依靠:依赖:

The country depends heavily on its export of farming products.

这个国家在很大程度上依赖于其农产品的出口。 They depended on us for help. 他们依靠的是我们的帮助。

#### (3) 信赖;相信:

We can depend on the accuracy of the test. 我们可以相信测试的准确性,

You can depend on John—he is an honest man. 你可以信赖约翰——他是一个诚实的人。

#### 2. win v.

#### (1) 贏(如比赛或奖项);获胜;

Which team won?

哪一队获胜了?

He felt very excited to have won the gold medal. 赢得了金牌,他感到非常兴奋。

### (2)(经过努力等)贏得;取得;成功:

Do you think he will win the election? 你认为他竟选会成功吗?

He had been applying for a scholarship and he won at last.

他一直在申请奖学金并终于获得了。



# 练习答案 Key to written exercises

#### Lesson 138

Α

- 1 He is doing the football pools.
- 2 No, he has never won anything on the football pools.
- 3 He will buy his wife a mink coat if he wins a lot of money.
- 4 No, she doesn't.
- 5 She wants to see the world.
- 6 He will try and win the football pools again.
- 7 Yes, it's only a dream.
- 8 It all depends on 'if'.

В

- 1 If he misses the bus, he'll take a taxi.
- 2 If he doesn't sell his old car, he won't buy a new one.
- 3 If they offer me more money, I'll work less.
- 4 If she doesn't type the letter, he'll type it himself.
- 5 If they come home early, the children will play in the garden.
- 6 If I am ill tomorrow, I won't go to work.
- 7 If I go to the party, I'll enjoy myself.
- 8 If he asks me, I'll tell him the truth.
- 9 If it rains tomorrow, they'll stay at home.

С

- 1 She can live abroad if she is rich.
- 2 He can travel round the world if he is rich.
- 3 He can buy a new house if he is rich.

292

- 4 They can have a long holiday if they are rich.
- 5 I can enjoy myself if I am rich.
- 6 You can offer your boss a job if you are rich.
- 7 He can fly to Tokyo if he is rich.
- 8 She can work less if she is rich.

# Lessons $139 \sim 140$

# ☐ 课文详注 Further notes on the text

1. Tell Mary we'll be late for dinner this evening. 你告诉玛丽,今晚吃饭我们将晚到一会儿。

句中 we will be late...是一个宾语从句,作动词 tell 的宾语。这个宾语从句省略了引导词 that。late 表示"迟到"的意思时通常作表语,与 for 连用。

2. by the way, 顺便(问、说一下)。

说话者忽然想到另一件事的时候用此来表示改变话题。

# 圖 语法 Grammar in use

#### 宾语从句(2)

在以前已介绍过宾语从句一般由 that, which 和 whom 引导,它们有时在口语中可以省略。除此之外,宾语从句还可以由when, where, what, why, how 以及 if 和 whether 这些疑问词来引导,而它们在句中往往不能加以省略。无论是 that, if 还是wh- 疑问词引导的宾语从句通常都应以陈述句的形式出现。请看例句:

She wants to know when you'll have a bath.

她想知道你何时洗澡。

I don't know where she lives.

我不知道她住在哪儿。

He wants to know what you are cooking.

他想知道你在做什么饭。

She wants to know why Mary is late.

她想知道玛丽为何迟到。

He wants to know if you are tired. 包想知道你是否累了

## 词汇学习 Word study

#### 1. extra

(1) adj. 额外的;外加的;另外收费的;

Could you get an extra bottle of milk? 请你再拿一瓶牛奶好吗?

On Sundays, she always gets some extra sleep.

星期天她总是比平时多睡--会儿。

Guests at this hotel can use the gym at no extra cost.

这家饭店的客人们可以使用健身房,不再额外收费。

(2) adv. 额外地;另外:

He usually works extra on weekends.

他通常在周末加班。

They'll charge you extra for room service.

饭菜送到房间是要另外收费的。

She is extra nice to her colleagues these days.

这些日子她对她的同事们特别好。

#### 2. overseas

(1) adj. 海外的;国外的:

The university recruits a large number of overseas students each year.

这所大学每年招收大量的外国留学生。

This small country depends heavily on its overseas trade. 这个小国在很大程度上依赖于其海外贸易。

(2) adv. 在(或向)海外;在(或向)国外;

John is going to work overseas soon.

约翰不久就要出国工作了。
He has never been overseas.
他还从未出过国。

# Ø

### 练习答案 Key to written exercises

#### Lesson 140

A

- 1 Yes. Graham Turner is speaking to John Smith.
- 2 Mary invited Mr. and Mrs. Turner to dinner.
- 3 Graham Turner said he would be there at six o'clock.
- 4 Because his boss wanted him to do some extra work.
- 5 No, he doesn't.
- 6 Mr. Turner's wife wants to know if Mary needs any help.

В

- I want to know if you are late. Tell me if you are late.
   I want to know why you are late. Tell me why you are late.
- I want to know if you are dirty. Tell my if you are dirty. I want to know why you are dirty. Tell me why you are dirty.
- 3 I want to know if you are lazy. Tell me if you are lazy.
  I want to know why you are lazy. Tell me why you are lazy.
- I want to know if you are busy. Tell me if you are busy.

  I want to know why you are busy. Tell me why you are busy.

 $\mathbf{C}$ 

1 I want to know if you are writing. Tell me if you are 296

writing.

I want to know what you are writing. Tell me what you are writing.

2 I want to know if you are cooking. Tell me if you are cooking.

I want to know what you are cooking. Tell me what you are cooking.

3 I want to know if you are painting. Tell me if you are painting.

I want to know what you are painting. Tell me what you are painting.

4 I want to know if you are playing. Tell me if you are playing.

I want to know what you are playing. Tell me what you are playing.

D

1 I want to know if Tom got up early. Tell me if Tom got up early.

I want to know when Tom got up. Tell me when Tom got up.

2 I want to know if Tom arrived late. Tell me if Tom arrived late.

I want to know when Tom arrived. Tell me when Tom arrived.

3 I want to know if Tom did his homework yesterday. Tell me if Tom did his homework yesterday.

I want to know when Tom did his homework yesterday. Tell me when Tom did his homework yesterday. 4 I want to know if Tom had a bath yesterday. Tell me if Tom had a bath yesterday.

I want to know when Tom had a bath yesterday. Tell me when Tom had a bath yesterday.

### Lessons 141~142

# 课文详注 Further notes on the text

1. my four-year-old daughter, 我那 4 岁的女儿。

four-year-old 是名词 daughter 的定语。各词用连字符连在一起,构成一个复合形容词。注意在这个复合词中仅用 year,而不用复数:

a thirteen-year-old girl 一个 13 岁的姑娘

Sally was invited to a children's party. ·····萨莉被邀请去参加一个儿童聚会。

这是一个被动语态的例子。在英文中,如果想避免用含混不清的词(如 someone 等)作主语,常常可使用被动词态。(具体请参见本课语法部分。)被动语态由相应的 be 动词加上过去分词构成:

It is repaired regularly.

它定期修理。

They are corrected regularly.

它们得到了定期校正。

He was met at the station this morning.

今早有人在车站接他。

3. a middle-aged lady, 一位中年女士。

middle-aged 是一个复合形容词,由名词+过去分词构成。又如:

hand-made 手工制作的

4. opposite Sally,在萨莉的对面。

这是介词短语,作状语,表示 sat 的具体情况。

5. take out, 拿出。

- 6. make up her face, 往她的脸上施脂粉。
  make up 意为"化妆"、"打扮"(指擦胭脂、抹粉)。
- 7. To make myself beautiful... 把自己打扮漂亮…… 这是一个省略句,句首省略了 I am doing that,而只留下这个作目的状语的动词不定式短语。
- 8. put away, 收拾好,储存备用。

# ☐ 语法 Grammar in use

#### 被动语态(1)

英语动词有主动语态和被动语态之分。在主动句中,动词的主语是执行动作的人或物。在被动句中,主语是动作的承受者。在英语中被动词态用得很普遍,这样做可以避免用不明确的词作主语,或是将说话的重点放在事件而不是造成该事件的人或物上。

被动语态的构成:be+过去分词。

过去分词不一定指过去。请看例句:

(1) 一般现在时形式; am/are/is+过去分词;

The room is aired regularly.

这个房间定期通风。

The knives are sharpened regularly.

刀定期磨。

(2) 一般过去时形式: was/were + 过去分词:

She was dressed in red.

她身穿红色衣服。

The windows were opened this morning.

窗户今早是开着的/被打开了。

(3) 英语中表达感情的动词通常可用于被动式,这些动词如 amuse, embarrass, worry, surprise, interest, upset 等:

300

She is embarrassed.

姬感到尴尬。

They were worried.

他们感到担忧。

### 词汇学习 Word study

- 1. embarrassed adj.
- (1) 尴尬的;局促不安的:

He felt so embarrassed at that moment.

在那一刻,他感到如此尴尬。

The girl was very embarrassed to speak in front of so many strangers.

在如此之多的陌生人面前讲话,那个女孩子很是局促不安。

(2) 陷入困境的;拮据的;

He was financially embarrassed.

他经济上陷入了困境。

He says that he is embarrassed at the moment, but he will be able to pay you next month.

他说他目前手头紧,但下个月就可以付钱给你。

- 2. curiously adv.
- (1) 好奇地:

The little boy watched curiously as his mum opened the box.

那个小男孩好奇地看着他妈妈打开盒子。

(2) 过于好奇地:

She curiously opened the letter addressed to her husband. 她抑制不住好奇心,拆开了别人写给她丈夫的信。

#### 3. kindly adv.

#### (1) 和蔼地;亲切地;

He treats the children kindly.

他待孩子们和蔼而仁慈。

The old man greeted us kindly.

那位老人亲切地招呼我们。

# (2) 请(=please,有时表示客气,有时表示不满等):

Will you kindly leave the room?

请你离开这房间好吗?

Kindly acknowledge this letter.

此信收到后请告知。

#### (3) 乐意地;感谢地:

He never takes criticism kindly.

他从不乐于接受批评。

# 🖄 练习答案 Key to written exercises

#### Lesson 142

Α

- 1 Sally is four years old.
- 2 Because Sally had never travelled on a train before.
- 3 She sat near the window.
- 4 A middle-aged lady got on the train.
- 5 The lady was dressed in a blue coat and a large, funny hat.
- 6 She opened her handbag and took out her powder compact. Then she began to make up her face.
- 7 Because she wanted to make herself beautiful.
- 8 No, she didn't.

- 1 Someone airs it regularly. It is aired regularly.
- 2 Someone cleans them regularly. They are cleaned regularly.
- 3 Someone empties it regularly. It is emptied regularly.
- 4 Someone sharpens it regularly. It is sharpened regularly.
- 5 Someone turns them on regularly. They are turned on regularly.
- 6 Someone waters them regularly. They are watered regularly.
- 7 Someone repairs it regularly. It is repaired regularly.
- 8 Someone dusts it regularly. It is dusted regularly.
- 9 Someone corrects them regularly. They are corrected regularly.
- 10 Someone shuts it regularly. It is shut regularly.

(

- 1 Someone watered them. They were watered this morning.
- 2 Someone repaired it. It was repaired this morning.
- 3 Someone dusted it. It was dusted this morning.
- 4 Someone corrected them. They were corrected this morning.
- 5 Someone shut it. It was shut this morning.
- 6 Someone bought them. They were bought this morning.
- 7 Someone swept it. It was swept this morning.
- 8 Someone took them to school. They were taken to school this morning.
- 9 Someone met them at the station. They were met at the station this morning.
- 10 Someone told them. They were told this morning.

# Lessons 143~144

# **二** 课文详注 Further notes on the text

- J. is surrounded by, 由……环绕着。
- 2. hundreds of people, 数以百计的(游)人。
- 3. Visitors have been asked to keep the woods clean and tidy.游客已被告知要保持树林的整洁。

何中 have been asked 是被动语态的完成时结构。(详见本课的法部分。) to keep the woods clean and tidy 是动词不定式短语,作主语 visitors 的补足语。 clean and tidy 是宾语 the woods 的宾语补足语。

- 4. go for a walk, 去散步。
- 5. What I saw made me very sad.我所见到的一切使我非常难过。 句中的主语 What I saw 是 what 引导的名词性从句。

# ■ 语法 Grammar in use

### 被动语态(2)

上一次介绍了被动语态的一般现在时和一般过去时形式,这里介绍其现在完成时和一般将来时形式:

(1) 现在完成时形式: has/have + been + 过去分词:

The basket has already been emptied.

篮子已经被腾空了。

They have already been invited.

他们已被邀请。

(2) 一般将来时形式: will/shall + be + 过去分词:

The floor will be swept soon.

地不久就会扫的。

304

The knives will be sharpened soon. 刀不久就会磨的。

# ☑ 词汇学习 Word study

#### 1. place v.

(1)(小心地)放;放置:

He placed the record back to the shelf.

他把唱片放回到架子上。

Their request placed me in a difficult position.

他们的要求将我置于困境。

### (2) 任命;安置:

The company has placed him with a branch office in Tokyo.

公司任命他在东京的一家分支机构工作。

There is no better way to place the homeless children.

没有更好的办法来安置这些无家可归的孩子们。

### 2. prosecute v.

(1) 起诉,检举;依法处置:

Trespassers will be prosecuted.

闲人莫入,违者法办。

They prosecuted him for shoplifting.

他们起诉他扒窃商店货物。

(2)〈书面语〉彻底进行;执行:

We are going to prosecute the investigation further. 我们将进一步彻底进行调查。

3. surround v.

包围;围绕:

The beautiful white house is surrounded by green trees.

鄂所漂亮的白房子被绿树环绕着。

That old professor loved to surround himself with young people.

那位老教授非常喜欢年轻人围在他左右。

When I went into the room, I saw Tim sitting on the floor surrounded by boxes.

当我走进房间时,我看到蒂姆正坐在地板上,他的周围到处都是盒子。

# 赵 练习答案 Key to written exercises

#### Lesson 144

Α

- 1 The writer lives in a very old town which is surrounded by beautiful woods.
- 2 Because it is a famous beauty spot.
- 3 Visitors have been asked to keep the woods clean and tidy.
- 4 Litter baskets have been placed under the trees.
- 5 The writer went for a walk in the woods.
- 6 Yes, he saw a lot of rubbish.
- 7 He saw a sign among the rubbish.
- 8 The sign said, 'Anyone who leaves litter in these woods will be prosecuted.'

В

- 1 \*Someone has aired it. It has already been aired.
- 2 Someone has cleaned them. They have already been cleaned.
- 3 Someone has emptied it. It has already been emptied.
- 4 Someone has sharpened it. It has already been sharpened.

306

- 5 Someone has turned them on. They have already been turned on.
- 6 Someone has bought them. They have already been bought.
- 7 Someone has swept it. It has already been swept.
- 8 Someone has taken them to school. They have already been taken to school.
- 9 Someone has invited them. They have already been invited.
- 10 Someone has told them. They have already been told.

C

- 1 It hasn't been aired yeet. It will be aired tomorrow.
- 2 They haven't been cleaned yet. They will be cleaned tomorrow.
- 3 It hasn't been emptied yet. It will be emptied tomorrow.
- 4 It hasn't been sharpened yet. It will be sharpened tomorrow.
- 5 They haven't been turned on yet. They will be turned on tomorrow.
- 6 They haven't been watered yet. They will be watered tomorrow.
- 7 It hasn't been repaired yet. It will be repaired tomorrow.
- 8 It hasn't been dusted yet. It will be dusted tomorrow.
- 9 They haven't been corrected yet. They will be corrected tomorrow.
- 10 It hasn't been shut yet. It will be shut tomorrow.

[General Information] 书名=新概念英语自学导读1 作者= 页数=307 SS号=10385042 出版日期= 封书版前目正面名权言录文